

**Volume VIII****Ages to Come****Hebrews - Revelation****Introduction**

There is one verse in the Bible that instructs believers on how to study God's word. That verse is found in Paul's final epistle that he writes just before he is martyred in Rome:

**2 Timothy 2:15** *Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.*

When studying any portion of the Bible it is imperative for believers to always ask whom the book is written to, in order to fully understand its context.

**Dispensations in the Bible**

Paul mentions the word "dispensation" on four separate occasions. Sadly, these verses are not found in the modern translations of the Bible.

The word "dispensation" is found in 1st Corinthians 9:17, Ephesians 1:10, Ephesians 3:2 & finally Colossians 1:25.

**Ephesians 3:2** *If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:*

The very fact that the dispensation of the grace of God was given to Paul, implies that there was a dispensation that preceded it. That dispensation was the law, which was given to the children of Israel to follow.

**Galatians 4:4** *But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, 5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.*

Theologians have listed numerous dispensations that they see in scripture, but the apostle Paul teaches us about the three main dispensations in the Bible in his epistle to the Ephesians, and he gives them all titles. Those titles are:

**In times past: Ephesians 2:3**

**But now: Ephesians 2:13**

**Ages to come: Ephesians 2:7**

It is this third dispensation, Ages to come, that we will concern ourselves with now. The two previous dispensations that Paul mentions are dealt with in sections I and II of the Dispensational Study Bible.

**The book of Hebrews****Introduction**

The book of Hebrews was written sometime soon after Pentecost, and before Saul of Tarsus got saved in Acts chapter nine.

It is very clear that the message in Hebrews is harmonious with the doctrines being taught by the twelve apostles in Acts chapters 1-8.

Hebrews was written during the extra year given by God to Israel to produce fruit of righteousness after the cross in Luke 13:6-9. That year ended at the stoning of Stephen in Acts eight.

It was at Stephen's death at the hands of Israel's leaders that Stephen says something very unique to them:

**Acts 7:56** *Behold, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of man standing on the right hand of God.*

The reason this statement is unique is because of something Isaiah said concerning the nation of Israel about the two reasons that God stands up for them:

**Isaiah 3:13** *The LORD standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.*

The time for God's pleading with Israel had ended, so Jesus stood up to judge them on that day, and those religious leaders all took offense at what Stephen was implying concerning them.

They rejected the message of a man filled with the Holy Spirit who was giving the nation one more chance to repent and to produce fruits of righteousness, and instead they killed him.

When Israel's extra year to repent had come to an end, God postponed the wrath that he had promised to Israel, so that he could save Saul of Tarsus.

He would take the gospel of the grace of God to the whole world in spite of Israel's rejection. Jeremiah 30:7, Acts 9 & 20:28.

The book of Hebrews is written to Hebrews. It is not written to the new man where there is no Jew nor Greek. Colossians 3:10-11.

With the books proper context established, we can now begin to understand the message in this great book. The book of Hebrews is a transitional book that explains the changes between the Old and the New Covenants.

The gospels were the milk needed by new believers, while Hebrews through Revelation was the meat that these Hebrew believers needed to eventually move on to.

The church, which is Christ's body, is to fellowship in the mysteries that were dispensed to the apostle Paul by the risen Christ. Ephesians 3:2.

We are not a nation of priests, nor are we a covenant people. Israel is. Exodus 19:5-6. To claim we are "Spiritual Jews," or "the Israel of God," is to believe in replacement theology, which is very Anti-Semitic.

1st Peter 2:3-9 is not written to you and me today in the church, it is written to the Jewish remnant of believers that were scattered abroad. Peter was a part of that holy nation, not you.

You are a part of the body of Christ. Every promise given to Israel under the old covenant belongs to Israel, not the church. We have spiritual blessings in heavenly places. Ephesians 1:3.

The prophet Jeremiah tells Israel, who was still under the old covenant, that a new covenant was coming to the house of Israel and the house of Judah, and this covenant will be eventually written on their hearts during their kingdom.

**Jeremiah 31:31** *Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: 32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the LORD: 33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the LORD, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people. 34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother,*

*saying, Know the LORD: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the LORD: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.*

These verses have absolutely nothing to do with the church, which is Christ's body, they are written to the house of Israel, and to the house of Judah.

Did God ever bring the body of Christ out of Egypt? No. Did he ever establish the law with the body of Christ at Mt. Sinai? No. We were never under the covenant that he made with the children of Israel.

God was married to Israel (a husband unto them), and they broke the covenant that God made with them. After the time of Jacob's trouble, God will put his laws in Israel's inward parts, and he will write it in their hearts, not ours.

Israel will have no need of a Teacher to teach them the word of God because they will all know it. They will teach it to the Gentile world during that kingdom age/dispensation. This is not happening today.

### The authorship of Hebrews

Who is the author of the book of Hebrews? No one knows. Luke is the best possible guess as he was Paul's traveling companion and understood Israel's program as well as the church's mystery program.

Luke knew Timothy very well because they ministered together along with the apostle Paul. Luke learned what he knew about Jesus from the apostles.

As we study this book, we will not find out who wrote Hebrews, but we can disqualify a lot of people by some of the things that the actual unnamed writer says in his writings.

Paul could not have written the book of Hebrews according to Hebrews 2:3, because the author says he heard the gospel from those that heard from Christ personally (the apostles).

Paul said that God told him his gospel, and that he did not receive it from any man.

*Galatians 1:11 But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached of me is not after man. 12 For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught it, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ.*

*Hebrews 2:3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him; 4 God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will?*

The author of Hebrews doesn't claim to have any of the gifts of the Holy Ghost, nor to be able to do signs and wonders, and see divers miracles. Paul definitely had the ability to perform these.

## Chapter One

### Better than the angels

**1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,**

**Sundry times:** God spoke to Moses out of the midst of a burning bush, and another time he spoke to a prophet through a donkey.

**Divers manners:** He would speak to the prophets through the use of dreams, or visions. God even spoke to man through the use of

Angels at different times, but when the fullness of time was come, God sent forth his Son to speak unto Israel. Galatians 4:4.

**In time past:** This is a reference to God speaking to Israel's fathers by the prophets before the time of Jesus beginning his public ministry.

This would include the time of John the Baptist, who also was a prophet which spoke to Israel. Luke 7:28.

**The fathers:** Israel's forefathers.

**2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;**

**In these last days:** The "last days" in Israel's prophecy program began with the day of Pentecost. See Joel 2:28-32.

Joel tells his readers that when those things begin to happen, it will be the last days of Israel's prophecy program leading up to the time of God's wrath being poured out.

*Acts 2:17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:*

There are three divisions of time in the Bible, "in times past," "but now" and "ages to come." We live in the "but now" dispensation, a.k.a. the dispensation of grace.

The "in times past" dispensation was before the dispensation of grace, and "the ages to come" is after this dispensation of grace is over.

The dispensation of grace ends with the rapture of the body of Christ. 2nd Thessalonians 4:13-17.

**Spoken unto us by his Son:** Israel is the "us" in Hebrews 1:2. Since the world began, God has spoken to the fathers of the nation of Israel by the prophets, that is what we will refer to as Israel's prophecy program.

Just before the prophecy program was put on hold, God sent His only Son to speak to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Matthew 10:1-5.

Notice the phrase "in these last days" is used in the above verse. The last days are the last days of Israel's prophecy program, when the Messiah would come, and be rejected.

The writer of Hebrews believed as did his Hebrew hearers that they were prophetically in Israel's last days because they were.

Their last days however were put on hold so that God could usher in the unprophesied dispensation of grace which we are experiencing still today. This dispensation will end with the rapture of the church, the body of Christ.

*Ephesians 3:2 If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:*

Israel was in the last days of her prophecy program until God set her aside in partial blindness because of unbelief to usher in the body of Christ. Romans 11:25.

The last days for Israel will pick back up again when the tribulation period, the time of Jacob's trouble begins, and they will end when Israel enters into her rest during the kingdom.

We, in the body of Christ are living in the dispensation of grace, also known as the "but now" time period.

*Ephesians 2:7 That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through*

*Christ Jesus. 8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: 9 Not of works, lest any man should boast. 10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them. 11 Wherefore remember, that ye being in time past Gentiles in the flesh, who are called Uncircumcision by that which is called the Circumcision in the flesh made by hands; 12 That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world: 13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.*

The book of Ephesians shows us God's way of rightly dividing time according to his plan. Those times are: In time past, but now, and ages to Come. Ephesians 2:2-13.

Peter said that Israel was in the last days of their prophecy program in Acts 2 & 3.

The "but now" period did not start until the body of Christ began with the conversion of Saul of Tarsus who was given the dispensation of grace to give unto us today in the body of Christ. Ephesians 3:2.

*Ephesians 3:1 For this cause I Paul, the prisoner of Jesus Christ for you Gentiles, 2 If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward: 3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words, 4 Whereby, when ye read, ye may understand my knowledge in the mystery of Christ) 5 Which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; 6 That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:*

We are not in the last days of Israel's prophecy program today. We are a parenthetical people in the church's mystery program, that was un-propheesied in the old testament.

Our mystery program also has its own last days which will end with our rapture. The last days for Israel program will then resume as the tribulation period begins, and it lasts for seven years.

**Whom he hath appointed the heir of all things:** Jesus Christ is the heir of all things, in both heavenly places and on the earth.

Believing Israel will be the heir of all things earthly. The church, which is his body, is to be the heir of all things heavenly. Ephesians 1:3.

**By whom also he made the worlds:** Verse two tells us that when God made the worlds by his Son, that he was God's Son when he made the worlds.

He didn't become his Son at his birth, or at his baptism, or even at his resurrection when he was begotten from the dead.

**Spoken unto us by his Son:** The us is Israel in this verse. The Son spoke unto Israel, and they killed him. Matthew 21:33:46.

**3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;**

**The brightness of his glory:** See John 1:14.

**The express image of his person:** This simply means that what God wants to "communicate" or express to Israel was perfectly

exhibited in his Son when he appeared unto them. Jesus is the express image of God.

When Israel saw Jesus, they saw the Father. When they saw Jesus, they saw Immanuel, God with us.

*John 14:9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father?*

Just as the Jew in the first century needed answers from the apostles about who Christ was, they are going to need them in the tribulation period to explain why they should trust Jesus at that time.

Those tribulation saints will want to know that if the Jesus described in the new testament, is the Christ. And if so, then why is he allowing the suffering they are going through during the tribulation period.

It is because he must wait for his enemies to be made his footstool as verse three says, which is a quote from Psalm 110:1. This Psalm is the most repeated verse in all the Bible. It explains Christ's delay in establishing his kingdom.

**Upholding all things by the word of his power:** See Colossians 1:16-17.

**He had by himself purged our sins:** Sins were never forgiven by a man's works in any age. Christ purged Israel's sins by himself.

**4 Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.**

**Being made so much better than the angels:** God has always existed as a Triune being, but the man Jesus, was made man when he was conceived in the womb of Mary by the Spirit of God.

His divinity did not begin on that day, it had always existed. No angel was in any way like him. Angels are created beings; they were not born. They did not exist in eternity past.

**He hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they:** The Son obtained a more excellent name than any of the angels at his resurrection when he inherited that name because of his faithfulness to his heavenly Father in his earthly ministry.

Until the cross, Jesus was just another name that many others in Israel had. After he had purged our sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high with a name that was exalted above every name.

**5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time,**

**Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?**

**And again,**

**I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? See Psalm 2:7 & 2nd Samuel 7:14.**

The answer to all of these questions is that he has never said any of those things to any of the angels. When God became a man, he took upon himself not the nature of angels but of man.

As the God-man Jesus Christ, God the Father instructs the angels of God to worship God the Son in human form at his birth in Bethlehem as they sang at his arrival.

When we see in verse five that God had begotten him, he is referring to him being the firstborn from the dead. Colossians 1:18.

He was the first to have a glorified resurrected body that will never taste of death again.

**6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith,**

**And let all the angels of God worship him.** *Psalm 97:7.*

No angels were allowed to receive worship because God alone was worthy to be worshipped. Since God commanded angels to worship Jesus, then God was stating that the man that they were worshipping was fully God, and fully man.

**7 And of the angels he saith,**

**Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.** *Psalm 104:4.*

**8 But unto the Son he saith,**

**Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom. 9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.** *Psalm 45:6-7. Acts 10:38*

Here we have God the Father, calling God the Son "God" twice in two consecutive verses. God never has called an angel "God."

**10 And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands: 11 They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; 12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.** *Psalm 102:25-27.*

In Psalm 102 we have a discussion between God the Son, and God the Father in which the Son asks the Father not to shorten his days.

The Father responds by saying words of comfort to his Son as he was dying on the cross. He would not leave his soul in hell, but he would raise him up.

Why couldn't the grave keep Christ? Since Christ was not born a sinner, and he never sinned, he did not deserve to die, because death had no claim over him, and he was able to leave whenever he finished what he was doing there.

The earth and heavens will get folded up and put away one day, and he will make a new heaven and a new earth. No angel could ever have this said about them.

**13 But to which of the angels said he at any time,**

**Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?** *Psalm 110:1.*

**14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?**

**Until I make thine enemies thy footstool:** Verse thirteen is a reference to Christ being told by the Father after his rejection by his own people to wait patiently by His side, in exile.

Then he pours out His wrath upon a world who has rejected His Son. Then he may go and establish His throne on the earth. His enemies are the religious in Israel.

**Are they not all ministering spirits:** These are Angels.

**Them who shall be heirs of salvation:** The writer of Hebrews says here that Israel shall be "heirs of salvation."

We in the body of Christ today are already joint heirs with Christ in heavenly places. Hebrews 6:17, 11:9, 1st Peter 1:5-10 & James 2:5.

Israel will receive salvation in the future, at the day of atonement, at the onset of the millennial kingdom. Angels were in time past ministering spirits to Israel. They will be again in ages to come as well.

## Chapter Two

### The Reason for His Incarnation

**1 Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip.**

**The things which we have heard:** This is a reference to things in chapter one that they should have given the more earnest heed to (the gospel of the kingdom).

**2 For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompence of reward;**

**The word spoken by angels:** This is a reference to the law and the prophets which the scriptures record that Israel received from angels:

In Acts 7:28 Stephen tells Israel's leaders that Moses received the "lively oracles" from an angel at Mt. Sinai. To violate the law in many instances was to suffer the penalty of death.

**3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him;**

**How shall we escape, if we neglect:** The "we" spoken about here are those that heard the apostles speak to them.

If the word spoken by angels was broken back under Moses, and the people were punished, how much more when it is the word spoken by God the Son, while he was in their midst.

**So great salvation:** The salvation that the writer speaks about as being spoken of first by Christ is in reference to the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 4:17-23.

**And was confirmed unto us by them that heard him:** It was preached by the twelve apostles to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

The apostles confirmed that message unto the author of Hebrews, and to the "us" Those who believed in Israel made up the little flock mentioned in Luke 12:32 who would inherit the kingdom.

Paul could not be the writer of the book of Hebrews because he did not receive his message from them that heard Christ (the apostles). He heard it from the risen Christ personally. Galatians 1:11-12.

**4 God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will? 5 For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak.**

**God also bearing them witness:** The writer proclaims that those that heard Jesus (the Twelve) bore witness by giving them signs and wonders, divers miracles and gifts of the Holy Ghost according to his own will.

The writer himself does not claim any of these gifts for himself, but solely leaves it as the twelve apostles alone who were able to perform them.

This excludes Paul from being the author of Hebrews because he had signs and wonders associated with his ministry.

This eliminates all of the Twelve from being the writer of Hebrews as well. So, the field narrows as to who the writer really is.

**The world to come:** Verse five also gives us a clue as to the world to come, which is a reference to the millennial kingdom.

In the kingdom the 12 apostles will sit on twelve thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel, and the world to come will be in subjection to them. 2nd Peter 3:13 and Matthew 19:28.

**6 But one in a certain place testified, saying,**

**What is man, that thou art mindful of him? or the son of man, that thou visitest him? 7 Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honour, and didst set him over the works of thy hands: Psalm 8:4-6.**

Christ was made a little lower than the angels so that he could taste death for all men. He was not lower in rank because he has always been God, but through the incarnation he humbled himself and became the Godman.

In his humanity he was a little lower than the angels, as we are today. Death can hold us, but it could not hold him because he was not guilty of sin. By his worthiness, we can be made righteous.

**8 Thou hast put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. Psalm 8:6.**

The author of Hebrews quotes David the Psalmist in the 8th Psalm here to back up what he is saying about Jesus and his place above the angels, so as to show his Hebrew readers that Jesus is the Christ.

He knows that these readers will say and ask that since all things were not put under him right then, why should they believe in him?

After the 1,000-year kingdom has ended, and Satan has been cast into the Lake of Fire, Christ will then have all things in heaven, earth and under the earth put under him.

**9 But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man. Psalm 8:4-6.**

**Made a little lower than the angels:** The writer explains that Jesus had to be made a man, and that he did not take on the form of an angel, so that he could taste death for every man.

**For the suffering of death:** He is saying to his readers that Christ had to become a man and die for them.

**Crowned with glory and honour:** He now waits for the end of the time of Jacob's trouble to return out of exile to destroy his enemies, and to set up his kingdom. Psalm 8:5.

**Taste death for every man:** *Revelation 5:5-9.*

**10 For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.**

**For it became him:** It was suited for him.

**In bringing many sons unto glory:** Those who believed in him as the Christ, would receive glorified resurrected bodies.

**The captain of their salvation:** The word captain means someone who keeps those below them safe by leading them safely through the battle.

**Perfect through sufferings:** The word perfect here means to make complete, or to finish a product.

Christ perfectly completed all things necessary for Israel's salvation and ours in the body of Christ. Psalm 138:8 & Luke 13:32.

If he would have done only the things which he did leading up to the cross it would not have been enough to purchase our salvation. He had to suffer, the just, for the unjust.

**11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren, 12 Saying,**

**I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.**

**13 And again,**

**I will put my trust in him. And again, Behold I and the children which God hath given me. Matthew 28:10, Psalm 22:22, Psalm 18:2 & Isaiah 8:18.**

Here numerous old testament Scriptures are quoted backing up the fact that God identifies himself with the children of Israel and calls them his brethren because they have been set apart by him the only one who can sanctify anyone.

It says that he would sing praise unto his Father in the midst of the church (assembly or congregation).

He did this in Matthew 26:30 before they headed out to the Mount of Olives. Why does he mention Israel over and over again as his brethren? Because he is their kinsman redeemer.

In order to be a kinsman redeemer, you first have to be a kinsman, that is why Jesus had to be a descendant of Abraham to be able to redeem his brethren.

The problem is that no one that is solely human, and a fellow Jew could ever redeem anyone because they were all guilty of sin by their earthly father Adam.

Israel's kinsman redeemer was virgin born thus bypassing inheriting mankind's sinful nature, and he never sinned by choice either.

He was tempted in all points as we are, yet without sin. He was a kinsman, who was willing and able to serve the role as the redeemer.

**14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; 1st John 4:2-3 & 2nd John 1:7.**

**The power of death:** Satan had the power of death, and of Hell. Satan can take a life, but God has the power to destroy him and his influence, and he will do just that one day.

In order for Christ to wield this power, he would have to become a man and do what man could not do, which was live a sinless life and suffer as mankind's substitute.

Through his death, he received the power to destroy the works of the devil. The main work of the devil was bringing about death upon mankind.

**15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. 16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.**

**Subject to bondage:** Israel all their life was subject to wages of sin which was death because of Adam's sin and their own sin.

They were under the law of Moses and were in bondage to it until what the law pictured showed up, which was Christ. He was the fulfillment of the law.

**The nature of angels:** Jesus was not an angel, a spirit being. He had flesh and blood, just as a man because he was fully man, and fully God.

**The seed of Abraham:** Notice it doesn't say he took on him the nature of man but the seed of Abraham.

He had to be born of Abraham's lineage because it will be through the nation of Israel that God will set up his earthly kingdom and place all things therein under his authority.

**17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.**

**Made like unto his brethren:** Who were his brethren? Israel.

**A merciful and faithful high priest:** A priest is a minister between God and men, which we shall look at later. The apostle Paul tells us just who it was that Jesus Christ came to minister to when he came in the flesh in his epistle to the Romans:

**Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:**

To Israel Jesus ultimately ministered as their merciful and faithful high priest. He willingly offered himself as their sacrifice, and asked his Father to forgive (to shew mercy) to his crucifiers.

Jesus is the head of the church, which is his body. He is not our king, nor is he our high priest. He is Israel's king and high priest.

A nation has a king. The body of Christ is not a nation, and has never had a high priest for that same reason.

Israel and the body of Christ are two different things associated with two different programs. In order for a priest to begin his ministry he had to wait until he was thirty years of age.

In Numbers chapter four this requirement is mentioned eight times (eight is the number of new beginnings) so you will remember it. Luke 3:23.

Jesus was washed with water and anointed at his baptism, and both of these two rituals were a requirement for a priest before they could begin their ministry. Exodus 29:4-7.

**To make reconciliation for the sins of the people:** A mediator had to make reconciliation for his people. Israel was Jesus' brethren.

**John 1:11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.**

**18 For in that he himself hath suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted.**

**He is able to succour them that are tempted:** He is able to help them that are tempted. Christ was tempted in all points like as we are, yet without sin.

He can relate to mankind having become a man. His temptation in the wilderness was more than the three short tempting's of the devil that we remember. They were preceded by 40 days of fasting.

### Chapter Three

#### Partakers of Christ

**1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus; 2 Who was faithful to him that appointed him, as also Moses was faithful in all his house.**

**Holy brethren:** The writer now calls the recipients of this epistle to the Hebrews, holy brethren.

This lets us know that he is speaking about the believing remnant during those days, and not the generation of vipers that existed at the same time, made up of all the religious leaders that wanted to kill the Christ. Matthew 23:33.

**Partakers of the heavenly calling:** The heavenly calling does not mean that they are called to heaven, but rather that their calling to be holy comes from heaven. This calling came at Mount Sinai when God called them to be a holy nation.

**Exodus 19:5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine: 6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.**

The writer then says that because I have showed you that Jesus is the Son of God, and the Son of Man in Chapters one and two, you now need to consider that he is also your Apostle and High Priest.

It is God the Father that appointed Jesus Christ to be Israel's High Priest.

**The Apostle and High Priest of our profession:** This tells you that the author of the book of Hebrews considers himself to be a part of that holy calling (a part of the kingdom of priests as Peter did in 1st Peter 2:9).

Notice that Jesus was the High Priest of our, meaning, Israel's profession. The writer includes himself with his audience.

Israel was promised that if they would be obedient to the covenant given at Mount Sinai that they would become a kingdom of priests.

They were not faithful, so they only became a tribe of priests (Levi). In the kingdom, this promise will be totally fulfilled. Exodus 32.

Under the new covenant, he will give them the ability to keep it by writing its words on their hearts instead of on tablets of stone.

**Who was faithful to him that appointed him:** Jesus, the man, was faithful in all that the Father sent him to do. John 17:1-4.

**As also Moses was faithful in all his house:** The house is the house of Israel. Remember that Jesus ministered to the circumcision to confirm Israel's promises that God made unto them:

*Romans 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made unto the fathers:*

**3 For this man was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, inasmuch as he who hath builded the house hath more honour than the house. 4 For every house is builded by some man; but he that built all things is God.**

**For this man was counted worthy of more glory than Moses:** This speaks to his humanity. Jesus was fully God, and fully man.

**He who hath builded the house:** The house of Israel. Moses was a part of that house, but it was Jesus Christ that created man and who built the house of Israel, thus qualifying him as the greater of the two.

**5 And Moses verily was faithful in all his house, as a servant, for a testimony of those things which were to be spoken after; 6 But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.**

The writer of this epistle compares Moses as a servant in someone else's house with Jesus as the son of the owner of that very same house.

**Whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end:** The writer then lumps himself in with this group and warns them that they were in danger of being removed from God's house if they did not hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

The end spoken of here is the end of the tribulation period (the time of Jacob's trouble). Jeremiah 30:7. We are not a part in any way of the house of Israel.

If they give in to the world during the tribulation period and they take Satan's mark, there is no chance for them. They will be cast out into outer darkness.

This is one of the passages people will go to teach that a person can lose their salvation today in the dispensation of grace. It is not talking to us.

If someone in the tribulation period does not endure unto the end, even though they believed in Jesus, he will say to them, I never knew you.

This is not doctrine for the body of Christ, but a tribulation teaching for Israel. Hebrews is written for Israel to help them understand what God is doing with the nation of Israel in that time.

#### The provocation

**7 Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith,**

**To day if ye will hear his voice, 8 Harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness: 9 When your fathers tempted me, proved me, and saw my works forty years. 10 Wherefore I was grieved with that generation, and said, They do alway err in their heart; and they have not known my ways. 11 So I swear in my wrath,**

**They shall not enter into my rest.)** *Numbers 13-14 & Psalm 95:10.*

**The provocation:** It is also called the day of temptation in the wilderness.

Israel is being told to hear God's voice again during the time of tribulation and to not make the same mistakes their ancestors made when they were wondering in the wilderness. They were refused entry into the Promised Land.

These hearers will be forbidden from entering into the kingdom because of their hardness of heart, and their love for the temporary benefits that the mark of the beast may provide them.

**12 Take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God. 13 But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.**

**While it is called To day:** While there is still time. The deceitfulness of sin will break some as they suffer in the wilderness, and many will turn their back on the messages that they have heard from the two witnesses, and the 144,000.

**14 For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end;**

**If we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end:** The recipients of this epistle are made partakers of Christ if they hold the beginning of their confidence stedfast unto the end of the tribulation period.

This is not Paul teaching the body of Christ anything. This is written by a Jewish disciple of the 12 apostles to the nation of Israel, who is telling the Jews that are following the kingdom program that they need to hold on to the end.

**Unto the end:** Those that hold the beginning of their confidence (belief in Christ) stedfast unto the end of the tribulation period, i.e., those that endure unto the end, they will be made partakers of Christ in the kingdom. Matthew 24:13.

This is written to the Hebrews that will be going through the time of Jacob's trouble. Jeremiah 30:7.

**15 While it is said,**

**To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts, as in the provocation.**

**16 For some, when they had heard, did provoke: howbeit not all that came out of Egypt by Moses. 17 But with whom was he grieved forty years? was it not with them that had sinned, whose carcasses fell in the wilderness? 18 And to whom sware he that they should not enter into his rest, but to them that believed not? 19 So we see that they could not enter in because of unbelief.**

How many people believed God in that day? Two, Joshua and Caleb, but the rest provoked God to punish them. The writer here compels his hearers in the first century and in the tribulation period to be like Joshua and Caleb.

They will need to believe the good report they have heard from God through the books of Hebrews through Revelation, that if they do things his way, he will get them through.

If, however, they listen to the majority in Israel, they will fall short and not enter into the kingdom of God that is eternal.

The offer of the kingdom in Acts 3:19-21 was rejected after just one year, so the writer doesn't want any of his hearers to miss out on this last offer of it. Luke 13:6-9 & Matthew 24:13.

#### Chapter Four Entering into his rest

**1 Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.**

**A promise being left us of entering into his rest:** Let us therefore fear is not something the apostle Paul would say to his predominantly Gentile hearers in the body of Christ because this was not written by him, or to the body of Christ.

We don't have to fear that we will come short of entering into Christ's rest because the author here is talking to Israel here as they go through the time of Jacob's trouble.

No promise is ever given to the church which is Christ's body that the millennial kingdom is our promise where we shall rest. Our rest is in heavenly places, and Israel's rest is here on earth. Ephesians 1:3.

The promise that was given to the Israelites in the wilderness is being left for the last generation of Israelites that go through the tribulation period. If they turn back, or do not endure unto the end they will not enter into their kingdom.

**2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.**

**For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them:** Notice it says that Israel in both the writer of Hebrews day, and in Joshua's day had the gospel preached unto them. This was not the same Gospel.

The word gospel means, "Good news." They had a different good news or gospel for those times, just as they did with the apostles, and just as we do today.

Today the gospel is the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus Christ. In the first century it was the gospel of the kingdom. In Joshua's day it was spoken by Caleb when he said:

*Numbers 13:30 And Caleb stilled the people before Moses, and said, Let us go up at once, and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it.*

But the children of Israel would not believe the words because they did not have faith in God to deliver the land unto them. Did you know that the word "faith" is used only twice in the whole old testament?

The first time was in relationship to Israel being told to go into the Promised Land and possess it. They did not do so, so God waited until that froward generation with no faith died.

*Deuteronomy 32:20 And he said, I will hide my face from them, I will see what their end shall be: for they are a very froward generation, children in whom is no faith.*

**3 For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said,**

**As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest: although the works were finished from the foundation of the world.**

**4 For he spake in a certain place of the seventh day on this wise,**

**And God did rest the seventh day from all his works.**

**5 And in this place again,**

**If they shall enter into my rest.**

Those in the writer of the book of Hebrews days who did believe in their Messiah would all enter into their rest.

In the tribulation period the only way to make it into the kingdom (which is the rest Israel has long been waiting for) is to enter into that rest by believing in the person who offers them that rest, their Messiah, Jesus.

**6 Seeing therefore it remaineth that some must enter therein, and they to whom it was first preached entered not in because of unbelief: 7 Again, he limiteth a certain day, saying in David,**

**To day, after so long a time; as it is said,**

**To day if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts. Psalm 95:7-11.**

**It remaineth that some must enter therein:** Those who first heard from God to go in and take the land did not believe the good news of their day and were not allowed access to the land for that reason.

**8 For if Jesus had given them rest, then would he not afterward have spoken of another day. Joshua 21:43-45.**

**If Jesus had given them rest:** The name Jesus is used here even though it is Joshua that is being spoken of. They are the same name. Joshua means Salvation.

The name Joshua does not occur anywhere in the New Testament because when it is translated into Greek and then from Greek to English, the translation is Jesus. Acts 7:45.



Joshua was a type of Christ, but salvation and true rest comes only from Jesus. After they had entered into the Promised Land, Joshua later spoke of their eternal rest in the kingdom.

Most commentators wrongly attribute the future time (another day) of rest as a heavenly rest.

No old testament saint was ever looking for a rest in the heavenlies. They were all looking forward to a rest here on the earth in a literal, physical, earthly kingdom long promised to Israel in the scriptures.

**9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God. 10 For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his.**

God rested on the seventh day from his work after six days of creation, and he tells these Hebrews that there is a rest for them that are going through the tribulation period. It is found in their millennial kingdom.

**11 Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.**

**Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest:** God warns future believers in the tribulation period that they should labor and strive against the temptations to compromise God's word for some pottage like Esau did.

They must not take the mark of the beast in order to fill their belly, or they will lose their souls for eternity.

**12 For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.**

**The word of God is quick:** Alive. Why should the Hebrew hearers labor to enter into their rest? Because God knows the thoughts and intents of the heart and he knows where someone is spiritually, even when they have everyone around them fooled.

**13 Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do.**

Notice that in verse thirteen we see the transition from the word of God to God himself because the Son is the Word of God. His word is magnified above his name because he is the Word of God. John 1:14.

#### Israel's great high priest

**14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. 15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. 16 Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.**

Here the writer explains that they no longer have to go to Jerusalem to the temple with an animal sacrifice, to a priest that may not know what they are going through.

They now have a high priest that has resisted all the temptations that are common to man, and he truly understands them, he knows what they need, and he can give it to them.

They could have direct access to God because of what he has done for them at Calvary.

**Let us hold fast our profession:** In the tribulation Israel will need to hold fast their profession (they are a royal priesthood 1st Peter 2:9) and not take the mark.

They are to be motivated by Israel's High Priest (Jesus) by his example of holding fast and going to the cross for them.

**Find grace:** Grace is spoken about 25 times in Genesis through 2nd Samuel as always being found. We don't find grace today; it finds us in the dispensation of grace.

## Chapter Five

### The Order of Melchisedec

**1 For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins: 2 Who can have compassion on the ignorant, and on them that are out of the way; for that he himself also is compassed with infirmity.**

Here we see the weakness and inability of the Aaronic priesthood to totally meet Israel's needs. It was an imperfect priesthood offering an insufficient sacrifice, by a priest that had problems himself.

**The ignorant, and on them that are out of the way:** To be ignorant of course simply means to not know something, but to be out of the way means that one deliberately turned aside from the truth.

**3 And by reason hereof he ought, as for the people, so also for himself, to offer for sins. 4 And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron.**

Jesus Christ's priesthood is so much better than that of Aaron because Israel's new High Priest did not need to offer a sacrifice for his own sins because he didn't have any. He could go right to offering for the sins of the people.

**5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him,**

**Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee. *Psalm 2:7.***

**6 As he saith also in another place,**

**Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec. *Psalm 110:4.***

**To day have I begotten thee:** Jesus was begotten as God's Son at his resurrection. He is the first begotten from the dead. Revelation 1:5. He became the legal heir of all that was promised to him by his Father on that day. John 1:14, 18, 3:16, 18, Hebrews 11:17, 1 John 4:9, & 5:1.

**After the order of Melchisedec:** The story of Melchisedec is found in Genesis 14:18-20, and he is not mentioned again until King David mentions the Messiah in Psalm 110 as being a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek.

*Genesis 14:18 And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God. 19 And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth: 20 And blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all.*

How was Christ to be a priest after the order of Melchizedek? This meant that Christ's priesthood was to be like Melchizedek's because he was like Melchizedek in many ways.

Melchizedek was a type of Christ, if not an actual pre-incarnate appearance of Christ (a Christophany), as many believe. Hebrews will explain for us the similarities in their priesthoods as we study further.

Immediately upon the day of his resurrection he was ordained a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec. The order of Aaron was for the Levite only and Jesus was not from that line. He was from the lineage of Judah.

Because he was ordained a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek, he was to start his eternal priesthood for the nation of Israel at that time.

The Aaronic priesthood was weak in that it had sinful priest who would eventually die and who would only have the blood of an animal to offer.

Christ's priesthood, which came from heaven, is a perfect priesthood, and it is an eternal priesthood.

**7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto him that was able to save him from death, and was heard in that he feared;**

**He offered up prayers and supplications with crying and tears:** This happened while he was on the cross. Psalm 22 & Matthew 27:46.

**8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;**

**Yet learned he obedience:** Christ was all knowing being fully God, but being fully man as well he learned what it meant to suffer hunger, and physical pain.

He did always those things which pleased the Father according to John 8:29, even the suffering of the Cross.

**9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;**

**Being made perfect:** This verse isn't talking about Christ being made sinless. He never sinned. It means to be a finished, or a complete work. Remember his last words?

It is finished. Christ finished the work he came here to do, and he was made perfect or complete at that time.

**The author of eternal salvation:** Because he did that for Israel and us, he became the author (originator) of eternal salvation. Notice the clear reference to those who obey him? No one is an author who has not yet finished a book.

Christ became the author of eternal salvation for them that obeyed him once he fulfilled all that was required of him to be their salvation's author.

**Unto all them that obey him:** That is the same program that Israel has always been under (the law). Jesus told the apostles this very thing in his commission to them in Matthew:

**Matthew 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.**

**10 Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec. 11 Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing ye are dull of hearing. 12 For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat.**

**The first principles of the oracles of God:** The writer wants to tell them deeper things about Christ being their Apostle and High Priest, but they would choke on it because they are having a hard time being obedient to the simpler things.

**13 For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.**

There were so many things that God wanted to say to these Hebrew hearers, but they were dull of hearing.

They should have been so moved by what they heard the first time that they should be teaching others by now, but they are not and instead need to hear it all again.

Most people unfortunately do not understand right division today, because they have not decided to follow the truth that they do understand.

## Chapter Six

### Falling Away

This chapter, along with chapters three and ten, are the three chapters that give believers today the most problems.

This is where many denominations go to teach that you can lose your salvation. If you do not understand who the books audience is, you will be caught up in that as well, and confused.

The book of Hebrews is written to the Hebrews; it is not written to the body of Christ. This is not our epistle today in the dispensation of grace, it for Israel (the Hebrews) in the future time of Jacob's trouble.

It was written for that first century kingdom church made up of solely Jews (with the exception of Cornelius's household), and for the tribulation saints enduring to the end of the time of Jacob's trouble.

**1 Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God, 2 Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands, and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment. 3 And this will we do, if God permit.**

**Leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ:** The writer wants to go on unto the deeper things in verses one and two to help

mature them, and to equip them for the time was upon them so they wouldn't fall away.

Notice that the writer says that repentance from dead works was a foundational teaching under this Hebrew system, along with faith towards God.

Notice also that the Hebrew audience is told to go on past the foundational doctrine of baptisms (plural), not baptism (singular). When you read the word baptism in the Bible don't always think of water.

There is the baptism "with the Holy Ghost" (being filled with the Holy Ghost) which happened at Pentecost, and numerous other times to the twelve apostles in the early Acts period. Acts 4:8 & 31.

There is baptism with water that John did, called the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins, which is not how Paul baptized. Mark 1:4.

Then there is the baptism "by the holy Spirit," not "with the holy Spirit," that Paul revealed to the body of Christ. A believer today receives the holy Spirit the moment they are saved, and placed into the body of Christ by the Holy Spirit.

The writer of Hebrews was not writing to the body of Christ, he is writing to Israel. Which is another proof that Paul is not the author of Hebrews, because he is the apostle of the Gentiles.

***1st Corinthians 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.***

And lastly, there is "the baptism of fire" that is the baptism for all the lost in Hell and eventually in the lake of fire for rejecting Christ. This is mentioned by John the Baptist to the crowd that rejected his baptism in Matthew 3:11 & Luke 7:29-30.

The doctrine of laying on of hands, resurrection of the dead and eternal judgment are also foundational truths that every believer in Israel's kingdom program (which is on hold today), they should have understood, but they didn't.

**Let us go on unto perfection:** The writer wants to take his hearers on unto perfection (completeness) in their understanding of God's programs found in his word.

The perfection that was awaiting them in the teachings found in Hebrews through Revelation.

**4 For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, 5 And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, 6 If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.**

What is the writer saying here? Is he saying that a person in the dispensation of grace can lose their salvation? No.

He is not talking to us (the body of Christ) here. He is speaking to the remnant of Hebrews believers under the kingdom program that were saved in the time period of early Acts when the gospel of the kingdom was being preached to Jews only.

**Those who were once enlightened:** They tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost when they were filled/baptized with the Holy Ghost at Pentecost.

**Tasted the good word of God:** (the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 3:1, 4:17-23. Like Ananias and Sapphira. They were not trusting in the gospel of the death, burial, and resurrection that Paul preached. 1st Corinthians 15:1-4.

**The powers of the world to come:** These were the Apostolic signs and wonders like speaking in the tongues of 16 different nations at Pentecost to share the gospel of the kingdom with them in Acts 2.

Another example is the healing the impotent man at the gate called Beautiful in Acts 3, and when Ananias and Sapphira died for lying to the Holy Ghost in Acts chapter five.

**It is impossible, if they shall fall away, to renew them again to repentance:** Notice that verse six is part of the same sentence that begun back in verse four. It was impossible for the Hebrew believers to be renewed again if they fell away.

These verses teach exactly what they say that someone who had these experiences mentioned in verse four of this chapter, and they then left them (had fallen away), they could not be saved again (be renewed unto repentance).

No one who was saved in this dispensation of grace, has never had a taste of the kingdom of heaven, nor have you been a partaker of the Holy Ghost in the way that the apostles were on the day of Pentecost.

This will be the same situation Israel will find itself in during the tribulation period when the kingdom will be offered again to Israel and this book of Hebrews will be of utmost importance unto them at that time.

### The Illustration

**7 For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from God: 8 But that which beareth thorns and briers is rejected, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned.**

The writer is explaining the importance of receiving God's word into his hearer's minds and hearts so they can use it to produce fruit. He is also explaining the danger of hearing and not allowing it to have its perfecting work in their life.

We have eternal security today in the dispensation of grace, but Israel did not have it in the old testament, nor will they have it in the tribulation period.

**9 But, beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak. 10 For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have shewed toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister. 11 And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: 12 That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.**

**Your work and labour of love:** Notice that the writers Hebrew audience has good works now, and God will not forget them.

His prayer is that they will continue on in their good works unto the end so that they will have the full assurance of their salvation.

**Inherit the promises:** He then goes on and tells them to follow (or do) what others have already done through faith and patience, and have inherited the promises already.

This refers to those who die in the tribulation period, or those first century believers that were under Israel's program, prior to the body of Christ being established.

**13 For when God made promise to Abraham, because he could swear by no greater, he swore by himself, 14 Saying,**

**Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee. *Genesis 22:17.***

**15 And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise. 16 For men verily swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation is to them an end of all strife.**

**After he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise:** Again, we see the word patient used in this chapter as a trait that needs to be exercised by these tribulation saints.

They must endure unto to the end of their life or the tribulation period so that they may enter into the rest of the millennial kingdom. This is what Christ meant when he told his disciples in his Olivet discourse:

*Matthew 24:12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. 13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. 14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.*

**An oath for confirmation:** This example of man's oath will explain God's immutable (unchanging oath) in the next verses.

**17 Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath: 18 That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:**

**The heirs of promise:** God offers a strong consolation for the suffering that is going on in these Hebrews lives during this time of great distress and tribulation.

**Two immutable things:** Immutable means something that is unchangeable. They are the facts that God made an oath, and that it was impossible for God to lie.

**The hope that is set before us:** This is the kingdom of rest. Here all the refugees will finally lay hold on the rest that God has promised them.

**19 Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil; 20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.**

**The forerunner:** Jesus (Israel's High Priest), is their forerunner (one that goes ahead), and he is their anchor for their soul if they will take hold of him. He will be sure, and stedfast to all who put their trust in him during those times.

## Chapter Seven

### A Priest Forever

**1 For this Melchisedec, king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him; 2 To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace;**

**The slaughter of the kings:** Melchisedec was not a Jew, all Jews descended from Abraham. He was mentioned as being both a king, and a priest, this would later be forbidden in Israel for anyone but the Messiah.

Remember what happened when Saul acted as a priest one day, because Samuel was late in arriving? He lost his throne, and that of his descendants. 1st Samuel 15:14-23.

Melchisedec was not just some Pagan King, because the scriptures say that he was a priest of the most-high God. He was priest of Abraham's God. So, prior to this there was at least a handful of people on the earth worshipping the one true God. Genesis 14:17.

**Abraham gave a tenth part of all:** All that he captured in battle. This was 430 years before the law was given to Moses. This was before there ever was a nation of Israel.

This offering was given to Melchisedec in time past (Ephesians 2:2), under God's dealings with Abraham and his descendants, it is not a requirement on the body of Christ today.

That program (which was still way in the future) had been kept hid in God from before the foundation of the world. Ephesians 3:9.

**King of righteousness:** He is called this before he is called the king of Salem, because where he ruled as a king was not as important as how he ruled. He ruled in accordance with the righteousness of God which is more than any other king could say.

**King of Salem:** Salem is the word shalom in Hebrew, and it means peace.

**3 Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life; but made like unto the Son of God; abideth a priest continually.**

**Without father, without mother, without descent, having neither beginning of days, nor end of life:** This could just mean that the Bible does not record Melchisedec's parents' names, time of birth, or the time of his death, or it could mean he is a pre-incarnate appearance of Christ.

**Made like unto the Son of God:** Jesus had a Father (God), and he had an earthly mother (Mary) which are both recorded for us in scripture.

We know when he was born, and when he died, but this scripture says he was made like unto the Son of God, not the other way around that Jesus was made like unto Melchisedec.

This could speak about his priestly office which he held when Abraham met him. And then he vanishes from the pages of scripture with the exception of the statement made about him concerning Christ mentioned in the previous chapter.

It very possibly means that he was made a priest like Christ would be, which was not of the lineage of Levi.

Since Christ was eternal and he offered eternal life, while the Levitical priesthood only gave someone the remission of sins for another year, Jesus' priesthood was a far better priesthood.

It makes sense then that Abraham would give a tithe to him. Why would he give a tithe to anyone else? What a coincidence that Melchisedec just so happened to be the king and priest in the city of Salem, soon to be called Jerusalem.

**Abideth a priest continually:** The Levitical priesthood had a 20-year time limit on it imposed by the law. Numbers 4:3.

**4 Now consider how great this man was, unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils. 5 And verily they that are of the sons of Levi, who receive the office of the priesthood, have a commandment to take tithes of the people according to the law, that is, of their brethren, though they come out of the loins of Abraham:**

**Consider how great this man was:** Melchizedek's priesthood was greater than that of Aaron's because Abraham gave tithes to Melchisedec.

Did Abraham before or after this victory ever give a tenth of his income to Melchisedec, or to anyone else? No, Just this one time.

**A tenth of the spoils:** Abraham gave a tithe one time, 430 years before the law came into being. This does not mean that God had instituted tithing since this time or since the dawn of creation, it was a onetime occurrence.

Abraham didn't tithe off all he possessed, just what he had gotten that day in battle. We do not have priests today in the body of Christ because we are not under the law. Romans 6:14-15.

**6 But he whose descent is not counted from them received tithes of Abraham, and blessed him that had the promises. 7 And without all contradiction the less is blessed of the better.**

**The less is blessed of the better:** This principle was seen often in the Bible when a father would bless his son, not the other way around, or when a king would bless his subject.

Melchisedec blessed Abraham, and Abraham thanked God by giving him a tenth of the spoils, because God had first blessed him with the victory.

This offering enabled the King of Salem to do what he needed to do with what he received from Abraham.

**8 And here men that die receive tithes; but there he receiveth them, of whom it is witnessed that he liveth. 9 And as I may so say, Levi also, who receiveth tithes, payed tithes in Abraham. 10 For he was yet in the loins of his father, when Melchisedec met him.**

**Here men that die receive tithes:** The writer was referring to people still under the law paying tithes to priests still under the same program.

**Payed tithes in Abraham:** Levi descended from Abraham so by Abraham giving a tithe to Melchisedec, it was as if his children did as well through him doing it.

**11 If therefore perfection were by the Levitical priesthood, (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?**

**Another priest:** This is speaking of Jesus Christ as Israel's High Priest. Since the law was not perfect it could never wash away a man's sins under the Aaronic priesthood, another type of priest was needed that was eternal to be Israel's High Priest.

**The order of Melchisedec:** *Psalm 110:4, Hebrews 5:6, 10, 6:20, 7:17 & 21.*

**The order of Aaron:** *Exodus 27:17.*

**12 For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the law.**

**The priesthood being changed:** It needed to be changed from the imperfect Aaronic priesthood to the perfect order of Melchisedec.

**There is made of necessity a change of the law:** The law that the priests upheld needed to change to a better system as well. That is the new testament replacing the old testament.

Hebrews is written to tell the law keeping Jew in time past, that there is something better that they should now follow.

**13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance at the altar. 14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood. 15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest, 16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal commandment, but after the power of an endless life. 17 For he testifieth, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.** *Psalm 110:4.*

**He of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe:** Jesus is from the tribe of Judah, which is the tribe where Israel's kings are to come from and the King of kings. Genesis 49:8-12.

**The similitude of Melchizedek:** Jesus is like Melchisedec, in that Christ is eternal, and Melchisedec had no beginning of days, nor end of life, unlike the Aaronic priests that have gone on before him and all have died, and we can read about their deaths.

Christ, and the new testament are better than Aaron, and the old testament. Under the new testament, God's word will be written on Israel's heart in the kingdom, and not on cold stones.

All of Israel will become a nation of priests, not just the tribe of Levi, just like God originally told Israel back at Mt. Sinai in Exodus 19:5-6.

There is an anti-Semitic teaching today that permeates a lot of churches called the priesthood of the believer. It is a doctrine of devil's stealing promises made to Israel by spiritualizing scripture to make it apply to the body of Christ.

Exodus 19:5-6 is not written to us in the body of Christ, neither is 1st Peter 2:5-10 which is written by Peter to the Jews scattered abroad. It is the fulfillment of Exodus 19:5-6 to the Jews in the kingdom. Peter is one of them Exodus was written to, you are not.

**18 For there is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof. 19 For the law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better hope did; by the which we draw nigh unto God.**

**A disannulling of the commandment going before:** The old covenant is canceled because it was weak, with sinful priests and sinners.

**A better hope:** The new covenant is the better hope, and it can make things perfect because it is written on people's hearts in the kingdom so they will know to choose good instead of evil, for all of Israel shall be saved, and know the Lord. Jeremiah 31:31.

**20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest: 21 (For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him,**

**The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec:)**

**22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.**

**An oath:** *Psalm 110:4.*

**A surety:** This is a banking term which means to guarantee for another. Christ is the guarantor of the New Testament for Israel.

**23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death: 24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood. 25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.**

**He ever liveth to make intercession for them:** Jesus is Israel's intercessor as their High Priest, and he is eternal.

The old system would not work anymore and their prayers and sacrifices at the temple would do Israel no good because they did not recognize the change in God's program for Israel after the Cross.

This book is written to the Jew to warn them that God is doing something new and better, and for them to follow the old, and to reject the New that the Old prophesied about, is to reject God.

During the time of Jacob's trouble there will be many Jews that will cling to the old testament ways, and they will reject the witness of the two prophets, and the 144,000, and they will be deceived.

This book warns them to move forward to what the Old promised, and to put the past behind them. To move from the picture to the real thing.

**26 For such an high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens; 27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.**

**This he did once:** Speaks of his death on the cross. 4,000 years of sacrifices all pointing to the one future sacrifice that would save them and they missed it.

The writer is showing Israel just who Jesus was, and is, and how that has changed how they should worship God after the cross, and during the tribulation period.

**28 For the law maketh men high priests which have infirmity; but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated for evermore.**

**The word of the oath:** This was the oath that has been quoted repeatedly in this chapter, "thou art a priest forever after the order of Melchisedec". Verses 20-21 above.

## Chapter Eight

### The new covenant

**1 Now of the things which we have spoken this is the sum: We have such an high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens;**

**We:** The first "we" in this verse is the writer of this epistle, and those who also speak the same things as the writer does, i.e., the writers of the Hebrew epistles (Hebrews through Revelation).

Hebrews 2:5. The second "we" is the Hebrews to whom this letter is addressed to.

**An high priest:** A high priest would make an atonement to God for the whole nation as did Aaron. Exodus 30:10 & Leviticus 21:10.

Israel's High Priest is currently sitting at the right hand of God waiting until his enemies be made his footstool, and then he will sit as King of kings on his own throne in the kingdom. Psalm 110:1.

**The Majesty in the heavens:** The word majesty is synonymous with the word majestic. It means glory, and radiance. The word is first used to describe God in the heavens by King David in 1st Chronicles 27:10-12.

It is often used to describe the greatness of certain kings. The word is capitalized only twice, here, and one other time also in the book of Hebrews. Hebrews 1:3.

**2 A minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched, and not man.**

**A minister of the sanctuary:** The word sanctuary means a place to find rest. Hebrews 7:25.

**The true tabernacle:** This tabernacle is in heaven, and it is better than the tabernacle that Moses pitched in the wilderness because the Lord made (pitched) it.

Christ's tabernacle is better than men's, and the writer is saying to his Hebrew readers, "Don't settle for the shadow, when you can have the real thing."

Notice that it is not the temple mentioned here, but the tabernacle. That is because it is before the reign of Christ. He will be in his temple in the millennial kingdom, but for now he is in his tabernacle in the heavens.

**3 For every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: wherefore it is of necessity that this**

**man have somewhat also to offer. 4 For if he were on earth, he should not be a priest, seeing that there are priests that offer gifts according to the law:**

**Every priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices:** *Exodus 20:24.*

**Have somewhat also to offer:** He offered a better offering than the blood of bulls and of goats, he offered his sinless blood that could wash away every sin. Hebrews 9:7-13:20, 1st Peter 1:2, 19, 1st John 1:7, 5:6-8, Revelation 1:5, 5:9, 7:14 & 12:11.

**For if he were on earth, he should not be a priest:** Jesus could not have been a priest under the Aaronic priesthood because he was not of the Tribe of Levi.

He could not have walked into the temple while he was on earth until a change was made in the first covenant.

Since he was after the order of Melchisedec, he could offer in the tabernacle in heaven a once and for all sacrifice for all mankind.

**5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for,**

See,

saith he,

**that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.** *Exodus 24:8-9.*

**The example and shadow of heavenly things:** The tabernacle was very important when it was being used, but it is not to be used anymore. The tabernacle was patterned after the one in heaven that Christ ministered in upon his resurrection for Israel.

The book of Hebrews, and the epistles that follow it belong to Israel and to her prophecy program. They are written for that little flock in the first century (Luke 12:32), and the tribulation period believers.

We in the body of Christ today are a parenthetical people. God has interrupted his prophecy program with the nation of Israel because of their unbelief, and has instituted his mystery program that had been hid in God from before the foundation of the world.

Once the rapture happens that kingdom program will kick back in during the tribulation period. It will be just like it was doctrinally for those first century Jewish believers back in those days. Israel will pick up right where they left off.

**6 But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises.**

**But now:** The “now” being spoken about here was the time when the book of Hebrews was written. Things will also be the same way in the tribulation period (the time of Jacob’s trouble). Jeremiah 30:7.

**A more excellent ministry:** As Israel’s High Priest in the heavens, not as an earthly Aaronic priest.

**The mediator:** Jesus Christ is the sole mediator, not a mediator, or a co-mediator, of a more excellent ministry after his resurrection.

This mediation was for those that were a part of the little flock in the early Acts period, and it is for the tribulation saints, as well

as for those believers during the millennial kingdom, it is not for the dispensation of grace. Hebrews 9:15 and 12:24.

He is today the head of the church, but he was believing Israel’s High Priest in early Acts, and he will be again during the tribulation period.

The old system will be in operation, and the books of Hebrews through Revelation are to be used as warnings to the little flock in that day, not to go back to the old covenant.

They are to harken to the words of these epistles, and words of the 144,000, and the two witnesses, to press on with a new, and better covenant.

**Better promises:** These promises are found immediately following the first announcement of the new covenant in Jeremiah 31:31-32:

*Jeremiah 31:33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the LORD, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people. 34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the LORD: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the LORD: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.*

**7 For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. 8 For finding fault with them, he saith,**

**Behold, the days come,**

saith the Lord,

**when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah:** *Jeremiah 31:31.*

The law was weak through the flesh of man. The law was good according to Romans 8:3 but it was weak because sinful men administered it.

**A new covenant:** This term is used only four times in scripture. It is first found in Jeremiah 31:31, and then here where that same verse is quoted by the author of Hebrews, again in this same chapter, and in Hebrews 12:24.

We were never under the old covenant, and we are not under the new one either. Romans 6:14-15. Israel was in the early part of the first century and they will be again in the tribulation period and during the kingdom.

**9 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not,**

saith the Lord. *Jeremiah 31:32.*

They entered into a contract of blessing and cursing with God, and if they continued in obedience to the old covenant God would bless them, and if they broke it then God will curse them. Leviticus chapter 26.

Israel broke the covenant continually, and they have been cursed for it, but here God is offering to them a better covenant than the one they had been under.

**10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord;**

**I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people: 11 And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying,**

**Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. 12 For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.** Jeremiah 31:33-34.

**The house of Israel:** This is the literal descendants of Jacob, whose name was changed to Israel. All of Israel will be saved at the end of the tribulation period and they will enter into the kingdom as a nation of priests. Exodus 19:5-6.

They will not teach other Jews the law because all Jews will have it written on their hearts in the kingdom and they will go into all the nations and teach the Gentiles.

Do you have the law written on your heart? Do you still sin? Israel won't in the kingdom. It is different, because it is not our program, We are under grace. Romans 6:14-15.

**13 In that he saith,**

**A new covenant, he hath made the first old.**

**Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.**

**That which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away:** Remember that the book of Hebrews was written to the Jews who had been scattered abroad into the Gentile nations after the time of the persecution that came as a result of stoning of Stephen. Acts 8:1.

They were living in a similar situation as those that will go through the tribulation period, and as such the covenant they received from Moses was waxing old and was ready to vanish away.

That program/covenant was put on hold, and Israel went into partial blindness, and now in this dispensation all Jews and Gentiles get saved the same way, by grace through faith. Romans 11:25, Ephesians 2:8-9 & 1st Corinthians 15:1-4.

## Chapter Nine

### The tabernacle in the wilderness

**1 Then verily the first covenant had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary.**

**Ordinances of divine services:** Notice it says here that the first covenant (which implies a second) "had", (past tense) ordinances of divine service.

These were all the sacrifices and offerings that were associated with them. Leviticus. The word "had" also implies that it doesn't anymore have this worldly sanctuary.

The use of the word "worldly" also implies that this other sanctuary will be other worldly or a heavenly one.

**A worldly sanctuary:** The tabernacle pitched by Israel. verse 2.

**2 For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein was the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary.**

**The first:** The first room in the tabernacle is called the sanctuary, there is no mention of an outer court where sacrifices were made for the sins of the people, that is because Israel's sin problem was already dealt with at the cross.

**The table:** This was the table where the shewbread was placed.

**The shewbread:** Twelve loaves of unleavened bread.

**The sanctuary:** The holy place/room that contained the candlestick and the table of shewbread.

Jesus had offered himself as Israel's sacrifice, and because there is a greater and more perfect tabernacle not made with hands that he introduces in verse eleven of this chapter.

Because this book is written to Hebrews primarily for the tribulation period where they will spend three and a half years in the wilderness, it only makes sense then that the writer talks about the tabernacle.

It was the tabernacle that Israel had for the forty years of wandering in the wilderness to worship at. The temple is a picture of the millennial rest. While the tabernacle is a picture of Israel's wandering.

**3 And after the second veil, the tabernacle which is called the Holiest of all; 4 Which had the golden censer, and the ark of the covenant overlaid round about with gold, wherein was the golden pot that had manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the covenant; 5 And over it the cherubims of glory shadowing the mercyseat; of which we cannot now speak particularly.**

**The second veil:** This implied that there was an entrance into the first sanctuary that had a veil to pass through.

**The tabernacle which is called the Holiest of all:** After the first tabernacle (sanctuary room) there was the second room called the Holiest place. Hebrews 9:12, & 24-25.

**The golden censer:** This is taken from the first tabernacle and used in the Holiest of all (the Holy of Holies). Leviticus 16:12 & Revelation 8:3.

**The ark of the covenant:** All of the items inside the Ark of the covenant were memorials of Israel's rebellion against God.

**The golden pot that had manna:** Israel murmured against God and Moses, when they were hungry in the wilderness, and he gave them manna every day. Remember the "Lord's prayer"?

**Matthew 6:11 Give us this day our daily bread.**

The Lord would give them daily only one day's worth of bread for forty years. This was to remind them of His provision.

They will be fed once again during the time of Jacob's trouble when they are again in the wilderness. This time it will only be for three and a half years while the mark of the beast is required to buy or sell. Revelation 12:6.

**Aaron's rod that budded:** They murmured against Aaron, and God showed them his choice for priest with only the rod of Aaron budding.



**The tables of the covenant:** The children of Israel rebelled against the word of God, so the tables of the covenant were placed there as a reminder of their weakness.

This would get them to look for a better covenant based on a perfect High Priest and Priesthood.

**The cherubims of glory:** Cherubims is the plural form of Cherub. The letters I and M, in Hebrew, when placed at the end of a word, make the word plural.

They shadow the mercy seat, with the cherubim spreading their wings over the mercy seat. Cherubs are not angels.

Angels do not have wings, as is commonly believed. Lucifer originally was called "the anointed cherub that covereth" in Ezekiel 28:14.

**The mercy seat:** The seat where mercy God would commune with Israel. Exodus 25:22.

**6 Now when these things were thus ordained, the priests went always into the first tabernacle, accomplishing the service of God. 7 But into the second went the high priest alone once every year, not without blood, which he offered for himself, and for the errors of the people: 8 The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing:**

**The service of God:** The priests, plural, offered incense in the first tabernacle as Zacharias did in Luke 1:5-8.

**The way into the holiest of all:** This is a reference to the holy place in heaven where the sin of the world would be dealt with once and for all when the perfect High Priest offered himself as the sinless Lamb of God.

**As the first tabernacle was yet standing:** The temple still remained up until the time just after Paul was martyred.

The 12 were still daily in the temple preaching and teaching because they had not been told by God not to go there anymore.

**9 Which was a figure for the time then present, in which were offered both gifts and sacrifices, that could not make him that did the service perfect, as pertaining to the conscience; 10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation.**

**A figure for the time then present:** It was a type of the real thing in heaven.

**That could not make him that did the service perfect:** This is speaking about the priest doing the offering, and the person he was offering for, they only had their sins covered for another year.

**Meats and drinks:** Meat offerings.

**Divers washings:** The translators chose to translate the Greek word "Baptismos" as English word "washings" because the Greek word meant washings.

It was not transliterated as the English word Baptisms for a reason. A priest had to perform diverse kinds of washings before doing the service in the sanctuary.

Remember when the leadership of Israel came to John the Baptist and asked him why he was baptizing if he was not that Prophet nor the Christ?

From that we have a testimony from the very people of Jesus' day that performed these diverse washings, that there were only two people allowed to baptize according to scripture and that was the Messiah and his forerunner.

This was also telling us that what they were doing (diverse washings) was not considered a baptism, or they would not have asked him that question.

There was no priest performing any baptisms for anyone in Israel. They all knew that it would be the Messiah and his forerunner who would begin this ordinance for the nation of Israel.

The "one baptism" of Ephesians is in reference to the fact that there were no longer two Spirit baptisms as there was while the kingdom was still being offered to Israel.

They were baptized "with" the Holy Spirit and the believers in the church, which is Christ's body were, and are baptized "by" the Holy Spirit, into the body of Christ.

When Israel was blinded in part, and that kingdom program was put on the shelf, so to was the baptism that went along with it, Israel's baptism "with" the Holy Ghost.

Today there is only one Spirit Baptism and that is being baptized "by" the Spirit into the body of Christ.

*1st Corinthians 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.*

**Carnal ordinances:** These were imposed on Israel until the time of reformation.

**The time of reformation:** The word reformation is synonymous with the words regeneration and refreshing which all three are used to describe the millennial kingdom when the curse will be lifted from off the earth, and all of Israel will be saved. Acts 3:19, 21 & Matthew 19:28.

**11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; 12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.**

**An high priest:** Jesus did not become Israel's high priest until the day of his resurrection.

**Good things to come:** Joshua 24:13-14 & Hebrews 10:1. This is a reference to the kingdom that is to come.

**By his own blood:** Christ's blood did not contain the curse of sin that ours does. Nor was it offered in a sanctuary made with sinful hands because that only provided a temporary covering for Israel's sins.

Israel had to keep coming back each year because it wasn't a perfect system, but Christ shedding his own blood and offering it to his Father in the tabernacle in heaven was a perfect offering.

**Having obtained eternal redemption for us:** The "us" being spoken about is the Hebrews under that system. Christ has also obtained eternal redemption for the Gentiles, but they are not the focus of the writer.

**13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: 14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?**

**The eternal Spirit:** The Holy Spirit. Because the old covenant was not written on their hearts as the new covenant would be, it was weak and could not purge their conscience.

**15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.**

**For this cause he is the mediator of the new testament:** It was Israel that was called under the first testament, and it is Israel that is given the New Testament.

Israel, in the kingdom, will receive the promise of eternal inheritance that is spoken of here. The church is not Israel, and it is not under any covenant or testament. Jeremiah 31:31.

**They which are called:** Those under the first covenant.

**The promise of eternal inheritance:** Eternal life in their kingdom.

**16 For where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. 17 For a testament is of force after men are dead: otherwise it is of no strength at all while the testator liveth.**

**The death of the testator:** The New Testament could not be in force until after the death of the Testator, Jesus Christ.

That means that almost all of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John cannot be considered the "New Testament" because those parts were before his death on the cross.

Since the New Testament will be written on Israel's hearts, they will know to choose good and not evil. The Jews will no longer need to ask their Jewish neighbor, if they know the Lord, because all Jews shall know him. This is not so today.

The New Testament is not in operation yet, because we are operating in an un-prophesied time period of grace called the dispensation of grace.

This dispensation has been hid in God from the foundation of the world, but now it has been made manifest through the apostle Paul to us.

**18 Whereupon neither the first testament was dedicated without blood. 19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people, 20 Saying,**

**This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you. Exodus 24:8.**

**21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry. 22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.**

**Almost all things are by the law purged with blood:** The law was not a perfect system and by the deeds of the law no flesh could be justified in any age.

It says here that "almost" all things are by the law purged with blood. The word "almost" means almost. There were some things that if a believer did under the law there was no blood sacrifice, they could bring to cover that sin.

That means the law couldn't purge everything with the blood of bulls and goats, but almost. The blood of Christ on the other hand can because it is a perfect sacrifice, with perfect blood.

**Without shedding of blood is no remission:**

*Leviticus 17:11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.*

**23 It was herefore necessary that the patterns of things in the heavens should be purified with these; but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these. 24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us:**

**The heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these:** Jesus alluded to his priestly ministry in the companion book of Matthew in chapter twelve when he compared himself to the temple of which he said, a greater than the temple is here.

*Matthew 12:6 But I say unto you, That in this place is one greater than the temple.*

He compared himself to Solomon the King because he would be a greater king than Solomon in the kingdom.

He compared himself to Jonah the prophet, and said that he was greater than Jonah as well, because he was Prophet, Priest, and a King.

**The figures of the true:** The holy places made by Israel for making atonement for Israel sins, meaning the tabernacle and later the temple. They were only figures (types) of the true tabernacle in heaven.

**25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest entereth into the holy place every year with blood of others; 26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.**

**Now once in the end of the world:** Christ appeared once in the end of the world because he came to put away Israel's sin in the 69th week of Daniel's prophecy concerning Israel's prophetic time clock.

That clock only had one more prophetic week of seven years remaining on it (the 70th) before a new beginning would occur. Their kingdom.

**To put away sin by the sacrifice of himself:** Jesus is offered up continually as a sacrifice for sin in many churches today.

These teach that the work that Christ did on Calvary is not enough, but only "the church" can offer salvation. What they are doing is making a priesthood for the dispensation of grace, which denies the sufficiency of Christ's finished work on the cross.

Christ appeared for the purpose of getting rid of the picture (type) to bring to Israel and the world the real thing that type pictured (the all-sufficient sacrifice).

**27 And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment: 28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.**

*Hebrews 9:27 It is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:*

*Romans 6:23 For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.*

**The judgment:** This is not the judgment seat of Christ. That takes place after the body of Christ is raptured from this earth. This is speaking generally concerning all who die. All will be judged, not all will be judged at the same place or time.

**To bear the sins of many:** Many have wondered why it says that Christ came to bear the sins of many, and not all?

The word "many" is a reference to the circumcision, not the uncircumcision. It is a reference to Israel, not to the world.

Paul later revealed that Christ died for all the world as part of the mysteries revealed unto him. 2nd Corinthians 5:14-15 and 1st Timothy 2:6.

**Them that look for him:** It is Israel that is to look for Christ's coming at his second advent at the end of the time of Jacob's trouble, the tribulation period.

**The second time:** Christ came the first time 2,000 years ago.

**Without sin:** He will appear to the world without sin. When he appeared after his resurrection he only appeared to a limited number of believers. 1st Corinthians 15:7-10.

**Unto salvation:** This is speaking about a time in the future for Israel, as spoken about in 1st Peter.

*1 Peter 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, 5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*

The church, which is Christ's body, is not looking for him to appear, we are listening for the sound of a trumpet at the Rapture. Ours is a secret departure, a mystery.

Israel however awaits the visible, and physical return of Christ upon the earth to begin his kingdom, and he will bring Israel's salvation with him.

*Act 3:19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord;*

Their sins will be blotted out when the Lord is present with them in the kingdom.

## Chapter Ten

### Good Things to Come

**1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect. 2 For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins.**

The believers under Israel's law could not be made perfect (complete) because their system was only a picture (shadow) of the real thing that was to come and therefore it could not complete them, but the new covenant will.

**A shadow of good things to come:** This is for Israel in the kingdom, not us in the dispensation of grace today. This speaking of the real things (in the new covenant, and its kingdom) that makes the shadow, the law (the old testament).

The new covenant will do for them what the old could never do, because it was only a weak shadow of the new.

This verse can be better understood by what Paul said to us in the dispensation of grace concerning the law and things to come in Israel's kingdom:

*Colossians 2:16 Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days: 17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.*

**A shadow of things to come:** The old testament laws do not serve as a shadow during the dispensation of grace.

It serves as a shadow of good things to come in the ages to come that Paul speaks about as following this current dispensation. Ephesians 2:7, 11 & 13.

**3 But in those sacrifices there is a remembrance again made of sins every year. 4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins.**

Israel was under a short accounts system under the old testament, we are in a paid in full system today.

Israel will be under the new covenant after this dispensation of grace ends at the rapture, and they will all be saved (future sense) in one day as they enter into their kingdom with their Saviour and inherit their promises. Acts 3:19.

**5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith,**

**Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me: 6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure.**

**7 Then said I,**

**Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God. Psalm 40:6.**

The author of Hebrews quotes King David's Psalm about the Messiah's crucifixion, to tell us that Israel's offerings for 1,500 years were only a temporary covering of sins.

They all pictured Christ offering himself. This offering was once and for all, for all sin of every age.

**8 Above when he said,**

**Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldst not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law;**

**9 Then said he,**

**Lo, I come to do thy will, O God.**

**He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second. 10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. Psalm 40:7.**

**He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second:** Christ established Israel's new covenant by taking away the first covenant at the cross.

Remember, the body of Christ is not Israel, the body of Christ was never under the old covenant, nor is it under the new covenant. We are not a covenant people; we are under the mystery program given to the body of Christ by God through Paul.

The old covenant has been replaced by the new covenant and Israel will need to recognize that during the time of the tribulation period the wrong crowd will be in control of the temple just as it was back in the first century.

Hebrews is calling them away from that old system. The antichrist will allow unbelieving Israel to rebuild their temple in that day. The two witnesses will be calling the Israel of God to come out of the old system and into the new.

**The which will:** This is an old English way of saying "that will."

**11 And every priest standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: 12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God; 13 From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool. 14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. Psalm 110:1.**

The High Priest of the new covenant sat down after he offered his own blood in the heavenly tabernacle not made with hands because his job was finished.

There was no chair to sit on in the earthly tabernacle, or temple, because the priest's job was never done, because their sacrifice was not sufficient to do the job under that system.

The sacrifice's that were performed twice daily were a constant reminder that one day the Son of God would give himself as the perfect sacrifice for mankind's sin.

Today, Jesus sits in exile in heaven, waiting until his enemies be made his footstool at the end of the time of Jacob's trouble when he will return in power and great glory to set up his kingdom. Jeremiah 30:7.

**He hath perfected for ever:** The word perfected means to make complete, a finished product.

**15 Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that he had said before,**

**16 This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days,**

**saith the Lord,**

**I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; 17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Jeremiah 31:33-**

**34.**

Israel is still waiting for the forgiveness of sins, but we today possess that under grace. Their salvation is a future national salvation that will occur in one day when Israel enters into her kingdom and is born again in a day.

They were born spiritually as a nation at Mount Sinai and will be born again as a nation, at the entrance into their millennial kingdom after the tribulation period comes to an end and God's wrath has been poured out.

**18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin. 19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, 20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;**

There will be a temptation by the antichrist and those that follow him to try to get the Remnant/little flock to sacrifice in the rebuilt temple during the tribulation period.

God will not be in that temple, and the 144,000, plus the 2 witnesses will be preaching against that as the author of Hebrews is forewarning its hearers not to participate in it.

**A new and living way:** That old system will have no benefit for them because their real High Priest has already offered the only sacrifice, they will ever need, all they need to do is to believe that and accept his forgiveness.

Jesus said that he was the way, the truth, and the life. He was the new and living way for those under that message. John 14:6.

**21 And having an high priest over the house of God; 22 Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water. 23 Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)**

**The house of God:** This is speaking about the house of Israel. Hebrews 3:6.

These saints are to hold fast their profession of their faith without wavering because Christ did not waver nor does his promise fluctuate based on their feelings at any given moment because he is always faithful. They must endure unto the end. Matthew 24:14.

During the tribulation period a believer does not have eternal security as we do in the dispensation of grace today, they must hold fast their profession without wavering.

Don't spiritualize this, accept it. They cannot say, "Since I trusted in the Messiah, I can take the mark of the beast." If they do so they will be eternally damned.

**Our bodies washed with pure water:** Just as John the Baptist preached the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins 2,000

years ago, so will the tribulation saints have to submit to the same baptism of repentance.

Matthew 3:11 and Mark 1:4 both line up with what Peter told Israel in Acts 2:38. Matthew 24:14. This is not something we are to be doing today.

Water baptism in this dispensation doesn't give its recipients the remission of sins because we are not Israel under the law, we are the body of Christ under grace. Romans 6:13-14.

*Ezekiel 36:25 Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. 26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. 27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*

This is speaking of the new covenant God makes with the house of Israel, and the house of Judah in the kingdom. Jeremiah 31:31-34.

**Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering:** Over and over again the author of Hebrews speaks about a different kind of salvation than that spoken of by Paul.

Today, the body of Christ has eternal security from the moment we believe the gospel found in 1st Corinthians 15:1-4.

We do not have to hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering, as they will be alive in the 70th week of Daniel after the dispensation of grace has ended, and they will have to believe the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 4:17-23 & Matthew 24:13-14.

**24 And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works: 25 Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.**

**Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is:** This is speaking of the day of Christ's appearing when every eye shall see him.

It is not the rapture for the body of Christ, because you cannot see that day approaching.

We have no seven-year calendar of events that we can mark off to know roughly when that day is approaching, but Israel in the tribulation period does.

They are encouraged to assemble as believers more and more as the times get worse, because they will need the support of other believers to provoke them unto love and good works.

**26 For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, 27 But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries.**

**If we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins:** Have you sinned after you were saved? Yes, you have.

Then you have an incurable problem if these verses are speaking to you. These verses are not written to us in the church Age. They are written to the Hebrews under the law.

Christ is our once and for all, sacrifice for sin, but Israel was on a short accounts system. They (the Jews) continually had to keep offering for their latest sins since their last offering.

There was no offering for Israel that gave them forgiveness in the future, so they had to sacrifice every year.

These tribulation believers will have works that go along with their faith after the Rapture, just as James teaches the twelve tribes that are scattered abroad, which is an Hebrew epistle written to Jews going through the tribulation period. James 1:1-2.

Read the first verse of the book of James and tell me who it is written to?

*James 1:1 James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad, greeting.*

That is not you. You are not the twelve tribes scattered abroad. You are the church, which is Christ's body.

You cannot run to the Greek and say verse twenty-six of chapter ten doesn't mean what it says, because it means exactly what it says. It is not written to me, or to you in the dispensation of grace, it is written to Israel under a different dispensation.

**28 He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses: 29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?**

**Hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing:** We in the body of Christ, are not under any covenant. He did however make two covenants with Israel. The old covenant, and the new covenant.

**Hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace:** Is to openly oppose, be against, or to defy the Spirit of grace. It is to oppose God by supporting something he no longer supports, because he has a new covenant that he has paid a great price to inaugurate.

Who is man to say, "we will stick with your old plan"? God says they will be attributing the blood of the new covenant as an unholy thing.

They are literally saying I don't want your blood sacrifice Jesus; I will bring my own sacrifice from a calf, or a goat, and if you don't like it tough! We do that when we place tradition above the word of God.

There was Moses' covenant, and then the New covenant in Christ's blood, and if you think the punishment was rough under Moses' covenant, the writer of Hebrews tells you that it is even worse for someone who rejects Jesus.

**30 For we know him that hath said, Vengeance belongeth unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord.**

**And again,**

**The Lord shall judge his people. 31 It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.**

*Deuteronomy 32:35-36 & Luke 12:5.*

This is talking about religious people who in the tribulation period decide to follow the old covenant, and who reject the New. It will have eternal consequences for them.

Today Messianic believers are being spiritually drugged into going back under the law when their sacrifice has already been paid.

They call it "Jewish roots," but what many of them do is try to put Jews back under the law when they are under grace.

They have to keep the Sabbath day, and the Feast days, and they don't believe in the rapture, plus they think they are going through the tribulation period.

They don't understand who they are today in the body of Christ, that they are not Israel under the law. In this present dispensation of grace there is no Jew or Gentile, but the one new man of Ephesians.

**32 But call to remembrance the former days, in which, after ye were illuminated, ye endured a great fight of afflictions; 33 Partly, whilst ye were made a gazingstock both by reproaches and afflictions; and partly, whilst ye became companions of them that were so used.**

**The former days:** This is speaking of those who believed the gospel of the kingdom when it was first preached by John and the apostles.

For a Jew to turn to Christ in the first century meant almost guaranteed persecution, and rejection from their families and friends. It meant the loss of their jobs and homes. For some it meant prison and even death.

**34 For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.**

**Ye had compassion of me in my bonds:** This statement means that the writer of this epistle was known by its recipients.

Some assume that the writer of Hebrews must be Paul because he was in jail. Thousands of believers were persecuted for their faith by Rome in those days, and in the early days it was Saul/Paul putting them in jail.

Peter was in Jail long before Paul was, while Jews were being persecuted and had their goods spoiled, just like will happen in the tribulation period.

I am not saying that Peter wrote Hebrews, but he is a much better candidate than Paul, because Paul could not have written the book according to the Hebrews 2:3.

**And took joyfully the spoiling of your goods:** The Hebrews that believed Jesus was the Messiah were kicked out of the synagogues, arrested by Saul of Tarsus (Paul), and forced to scatter from Jerusalem taking only what possessions they could carry.

They lost their homes and jobs and took it joyfully as they went everywhere preaching the word. Acts 8:1-4.

**Ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance:** This is speaking of their treasures that are laid up for them in heaven. Matthew 6:20.

**35 Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward. 36 For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.**

**Cast not away therefore your confidence:** Their confidence is that Jesus is the Christ will soon recompense them for the persecutions they face.

**Great recompence of reward:** This is speaking about being recompensed in the kingdom for their faithfulness.

**The promise:** They will inherit the promise made to the Jewish people if they have done the will of God during that time. The promise of a millennial rest in their earthly kingdom.

**37 For yet a little while, and he that shall come will come, and will not tarry.**

**For yet a little while:** This is written for Israel when the gospel of the kingdom is being preached as at hand.

**He that shall come will come:** Jesus their King will come and set up the kingdom which during the tribulation period will be "at hand" again as it was in the days of Christ's earthly ministry, but this time it will not be delayed because of Israel's rejection.

**38 Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.**

**39 But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.**

**The just shall live by faith:** The believer is to trust God to take care of him daily as the prayer in Matthew 6 teaches those Jewish believers to follow during those times.

**But if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him:** The drawing back means to not live by faith during the times spoken about.

Not trusting God to take care of them and then taking the mark of the beast so that they may buy and sell. This will be unpardonable, and God will not have any more pleasure in that person.

This is not how Paul explains "the just shall live by faith" in Romans 1:17 and Galatians 3:11. Here it is stated that those who draw back go unto perdition.

**Perdition:** This is damnation of the soul for eternity, as opposed to believing unto the saving of the soul.

That is not doctrine for the dispensation of grace, but for Israel's program under the law covenant. In John 17:12 Judas is called the son of perdition (meaning the son of damnation).

The words damnable, and damnation are translated from the same root word for perdition, Apoleia, in 2nd Peter 2:1-3. 2nd Thessalonians 2:3 also calls the antichrist the son of perdition. Revelation 17:8-11.

## Chapter Eleven

### Faith

**1 Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. 2 For by it the elders obtained a good report.**

**The substance of things hoped for:** These are the promises given to Israel of ruling in an earthly kingdom with the Messiah.

**The elders:** The elders are the people mentioned beginning in verse four and going on through the end of the chapter.

**3 Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.**

**The worlds were framed by the word of God:** Words cannot be seen, but the very words of God made everything that we see. Genesis 1:1-31.

**4 By faith Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaketh.**

**And by it:** Abel's faith. Abel heard the word of the Lord from his parents to bring a blood sacrifice, while Cain decided to bring a work of his hands.

God wanted only the offering that he taught Adam to bring, and Abel took God at his word and did as he was told.

**He being dead yet speaketh:** Abel's actions spoke as a testimony of his faith even to this day, and they will continue to speak to those Hebrews in the tribulation period and be a source of strength.

**5 By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God. 6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.**

**Enoch was translated that he should not see death:** Enoch pleased God because of his faith in what God said.

What was it that Enoch believed by faith? Genesis four tells us that Enoch walked with God after the birth of his son Methuselah. Why not before?

**He pleased God:** Jude elaborates just what it was that Enoch believed and preached that pleased God.

He preached the judgment of God on the world, and because he believed it by faith having seen nothing to prove it, God took him out beforehand, because he alone exercised faith for 300 straight years.

*Jude 14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, 15 To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him. 16 These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaketh great swelling words, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage.*

Enoch never saw the Lord come with ten thousands of his saints, to execute judgment upon all. Enoch set the table for Noah's preaching soon after. Genesis 5:19-24 & Deuteronomy 33:1-2.

**7 By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet, moved with fear, prepared an ark to the saving of his house; by the which he condemned the**

**world, and became heir of the righteousness which is by faith. Genesis 6.**

Righteousness did not come to Noah by his deeds. He did not wake up one day and say I will do this for God to receive righteousness from Him, he simply believed God, and acted upon his belief, and then he received the righteousness of God.

**8 By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed; and he went out, not knowing whither he went. 9 By faith he sojourned in the land of promise, as in a strange country, dwelling in tabernacles with Isaac and Jacob, the heirs with him of the same promise: 10 For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God. Genesis 11:26-25:8.**

Abraham heard God's word, and he acted by faith on what he had heard, and he like all the rest received righteousness by his faith. Faith motivates obedience.

**He looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God:** Abraham moved around a lot, which required he lived in a tent, because he was looking for a city. New Jerusalem.

He didn't find it then. He will in the kingdom. That city's gates will have his 12 grandson's names written on them, not his son's name, because the names represent the 12 tribes of Israel.

It is Israel's city folks, not the body of Christ's. Jesus was not talking to you in John 14:2. His audience was the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

**A city which hath foundations:** The wall of that city has twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

The twelve were apostles of the circumcision. Not to the Gentiles. Paul was the apostle of the Gentiles.

People want Paul to be the twelfth apostle to give them access to that city. Matthias is the twelfth apostle to Israel. Read Acts 1 and believe it by faith. Don't try to steal Israel's promises. Revelation 21:1-27.

**11 Through faith also Sara herself received strength to conceive seed, and was delivered of a child when she was past age, because she judged him faithful who had promised. 12 Therefore sprang there even of one, and him as good as dead, so many as the stars of the sky in multitude, and as the sand which is by the sea shore innumerable. 13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. 14 For they that say such things declare plainly that they seek a country. 15 And truly, if they had been mindful of that country from whence they came out, they might have had opportunity to have returned. 16 But now they desire a better country, that is, an heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be**

**called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city.**

**And him as good as dead:** This is speaking of Abram (Abraham) and his age. His body was well past the age of producing any offspring. So much so that his body was said to be as good as dead. Romans 4:19.

**The promises:** These were all the promises made to Abraham and his descendants.

**Having seen them afar off:** Is there an explanation of this in the scriptures? Yes:

*John 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.*

**Confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth:** Peter confirms this very plainly using the exact same words. Peter was an apostle to the circumcision.

*1st Peter 2:11 Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul; 12 Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation.*

**A better country, that is, an heavenly:** An heavenly country/kingdom that will come down to earth. Where God's will shall be done on earth as it is in heaven. Matthew 6:10.

**He hath prepared for them a city:** John 14:7 and Revelation 21:1-27. New Jerusalem has been prepared for the Nation of Israel, not us in the body of Christ today. It is their inheritance.

Only those Gentiles who were saved under the law, and those saved during the tribulation period will inherit a place prepared for them by Jesus, where they shall dwell for all eternity with Immanuel (God with us).

The city of new Jerusalem is also called the bride of the Lamb according to the Bible. Tradition teaches that it is the church, but tradition is wrong! Revelation 21:1-4.

**17 By faith Abraham, when he was tried, offered up Isaac: and he that had received the promises offered up his only begotten son, 18 Of whom it was said,**

**That in Isaac shall thy seed be called:**

**19 Accounting that God was able to raise him up, even from the dead; from whence also he received him in a figure.**

What faith Abraham displayed because the man offered up his son knowing God would have to raise him up because he promised that it would be through Isaac that his seed would be as the sand upon the seashore in multitude.

It is one thing to say you believe God, it is another thing to act upon it as Abraham did. That's faith!

**From whence also he received him in a figure:** God received Isaac in a figure as an offering his only begotten son. Jesus Christ is God's only begotten Son that he received literally as a sacrifice.

Abraham actually had an older son than Isaac, but God did not count that son because he was not the son of the promise.

**20 By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning things to come.**

**Things to come:** He told them what God would give them and their descendants in the future. Genesis 27:27-29 & 27:39-40.

**21 By faith Jacob, when he was a dying, blessed both the sons of Joseph; and worshipped, leaning upon the top of his staff. Genesis 48:8-20.**

Joseph knew because God said to bless the younger son of Joseph with the blessing of the firstborn because God told him to, and he believed God knew what he was doing, even when Joseph did not.

**22 By faith Joseph, when he died, made mention of the departing of the children of Israel; and gave commandment concerning his bones. Genesis 50:24-25.**

**Made mention of the departing of the children of Israel:** Joseph by faith knew his people would depart from Egypt because God said so, and so he, acting on faith, told his people to take his body back to Israel when they would return. That's faith!

**23 By faith Moses, when he was born, was hid three months of his parents, because they saw he was a proper child; and they were not afraid of the king's commandment.**

**They saw he was a proper child:** Moses' parents knew that God was supposed to deliver his people and they believed God and protected their son and God open the heart of Pharaoh's daughter to take him in.

In Acts 7:20 Stephen says that baby Moses was exceeding fair. It is the same Greek word used for the word proper in Hebrews 11:23.

**24 By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; 25 Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; 26 Esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures in Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompence of the reward. 27 By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king: for he endured, as seeing him who is invisible.**

**The recompence of the reward:** By faith Moses said, I am a Jew, and he knew that Pharaoh would want to kill him, but he knew that God would protect him because he promised to be with him. Hebrews 2:2 & 10:35.

**28 Through faith he kept the passover, and the sprinkling of blood, lest he that destroyed the firstborn should touch them.**

**The sprinkling of blood:** This was the blood of a lamb that was applied to the doorposts.

**29 By faith they passed through the Red sea as by dry land: which the Egyptians assaying to do were drowned. 30 By faith the walls of Jericho fell down, after they were compassed about seven days. 31 By faith the harlot Rahab perished not with them that believed not, when she had received the spies with peace. Joshua 2:9-14.**



How many of you would follow a commander without the fear of death if he told you we are going to march around the city seven times and then shout and the walls will fall down? Not any most likely. That is faith my friend.

A Gentile who blessed Israel was spared because she believed that Israel's God was the one true God, and she went against all her people because she had faith that God was going to deliver the city into Israel's hand because he said so. That's faith!

**32 And what shall I more say? for the time would fail me to tell of Gedeon, and of Barak, and of Samson, and of Jephthae; of David also, and Samuel, and of the prophets: 33 Who through faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, 34 Quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, turned to flight the armies of the aliens. 35 Women received their dead raised to life again: and others were tortured, not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:**

**Not accepting deliverance; that they might obtain a better resurrection:** They suffered standing for what was right, and they will be rewarded one day when they are resurrected into their kingdom.

Those that suffer all the temptation and trials of the tribulation period will receive their kingdom, and they will be received by their King.

**36 And others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea, moreover of bonds and imprisonment: 37 They were stoned, they were sawn asunder, were tempted, were slain with the sword: they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins; being destitute, afflicted, tormented; 38 (Of whom the world was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the earth. 39 And these all, having obtained a good report through faith, received not the promise: 40 God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.**

The message of Hebrews can be summed up in these last two verses, God wants the readers of the book of Hebrews that are going through the time of Jacob's trouble to obtain a good report, and the only way that will be possible is by faith.

The only way to enter into their (Israel's Promise) kingdom is to follow the example of those who went on before them.

**Received not the promise:** They did not receive the promise immediately like the believers in the tribulation period will, because they had thousands of years separating them from it, but these will have on a few short years, months, or days.

**They without us should not be made perfect:** Jesus was made perfect (a finished product: It is finished) through suffering. Hebrews 5:9.

## Chapter Twelve

### The Joy Set Before Him

**1 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, 2 Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.**

Israel's descendants endured with patience the race that was set before them by looking ahead to the promises that were given to them of an everlasting kingdom and inheritance and by that received a good report from God.

They still wait for the promises, but those in the tribulation period will inherit the promises with little or no wait as the kingdom will be at hand as they suffer the worse time the world has ever seen.

There will be no 2,000 or 3,500 years of waiting in Abraham's bosom to be resurrected to obtain the promises, it will come to them in a very short time.

**The author and finisher of our faith:** This simply means that Jesus is the one who gave Israel what they were to believe (their gospel) in their day, and that would see them through to the end.

**The joy that was set before him:** The redemption of mankind.

**Set down at the right hand of the throne of God: Psalm 110:1-4.**

**3 For consider him that endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds. 4 Ye have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin.**

**Such contradiction of sinners:** Surely the cure for those enduring the tribulation would be to consider Jesus, who though he was sinless, yet he endured the sufferings of the cross.

He was not powerless to stop his crucifixion as others were. He could have prayed to the Father, and he would have given him more than twelve legions of angels to destroy the world and set him free.

The number twelve is associated with Israel in scripture. Matthew 26:53-54. He endured being rejected by his own people, the twelve tribes of Israel, who he came to save.

He fainted not but set his face like a flint and went to the cross. No one has suffered like he suffered for us so we should continue on for his sake.

**5 And ye have forgotten the exhortation which speaketh unto you as unto children, My son, despise not thou the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when thou art rebuked of him: 6 For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth. Proverbs 3:11-12.**

**7 If ye endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father**

**chasteneth not? 8 But if ye be without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are ye bastards, and not sons.**

Israel will be going through the time of Jacob's trouble, a time like no other. God is chastening his children at the same time he is judging the world.

It is a far better thing to be chastened by a loving Father than it is to be judged by a Holy God. They need to endure the chastening of the father so he can deal with them as his sons in the kingdom.

**9 Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live? 10 For they verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness.**

**The Father of spirits:** To be the father of something means that it comes from the one being called father. The angels are called spirits and they all came from the Creator, God the Father. In that sense he is their Father.

**Partakers of his holiness:** Israel will partake of Christ's holiness after they endure the chastening of the tribulation period. If they choose not to endure unto the end of it, they will not partake of his holiness. Matthew 24:13.

**11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby. 12 Wherefore lift up the hands which hang down, and the feeble knees; 13 And make straight paths for your feet, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way; but let it rather be healed.**

Israel is encouraged to endure the chastening because of what is waiting for them on the other side, the kingdom.

They are encouraged to make straight their paths so they can live for him in that time or else it will trip them up and they are not able to enter their kingdom. Isaiah 35:1-10.

**14 Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord: 15 Looking diligently lest any man fail of the grace of God; lest any root of bitterness springing up trouble you, and thereby many be defiled; 16 Lest there be any fornicator, or profane person, as Esau, who for one morsel of meat sold his birthright. 17 For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.**

Esau did not inherit the blessing because he did not endure his momentary suffering even though he pleaded with his father at the end.

Those wanting at the last second to enter into the kingdom will be rejected as Esau was because when he had the chance, he did not honour his heritage.

Israel has a blessing coming her way and those individuals who do not endure the hardships of chastening and give in as Esau did will not inherit the kingdom.

**18 For ye are not come unto the mount that might be touched, and that burned with fire, nor unto blackness, and darkness, and tempest, 19 And the sound of a trumpet, and the voice of words; which voice they that heard intreated that the word should not be spoken to them any more: 20 (For they could not endure that which was commanded, And if so much as a beast touch the mountain, it shall be stoned, or thrust through with a dart: 21 And so terrible was the sight, that Moses said,**

**I exceedingly fear and quake:)**

**22 But ye are come unto mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels,**

**Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem:** There is a mount Zion on earth, and there is a mount Zion in heaven whereupon the city of the living God is, and it is called "the heavenly Jerusalem."

Do not confuse that city with New Jerusalem in Revelation 21.

**23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, 24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel.**

**The general assembly and Church of the firstborn:** Israel is the church of the firstborn, not us. They were born as a church when they assembled in the wilderness at Mt Sinai after they came out of Egypt.

*Acts 7:38 This is he, that was in the church in the wilderness with the angel which spake to him in the mount Sina, and with our fathers: who received the lively oracles to give unto us:*

Instead of the one angel mentioned there in the church in the wilderness, the writer says these Hebrews are come to an innumerable company of angels.

Not an earthly mountain but a heavenly one, not an earthly city but a heavenly one and to Jesus a much better mediator than Moses.

**The mediator of the new covenant:** Moses brought in the Old and Jesus the New. Choose the New is the message here.

**25 See that ye refuse not him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from heaven: 26 Whose voice then shook the earth: but now he hath promised, saying,**

**Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven.** Isaiah 13:13, Ezekiel 38:20, Hosea 3:16, Haggai 2:6 & 21.

**Him that spake on the earth:** Moses.

**Him that speaketh from heaven:** The Lord Jesus.

*Hebrews 2:3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him;*

Isaiah chapters two and thirteen speak of this great and terrible day of the Lord when he shall judge the earth and all the inhabitants thereof.

There will be no second chance, the kingdom will have arrived and all those that do not listen to the writer of Hebrews and those who have the spiritual rule over them in that day will not escape the judgment of God.

**27 And this word, Yet once more, signifieth the removing of those things that are shaken, as of things that are made, that those things which cannot be shaken may remain.**

**Those thing that are shaken:** They are identified in Revelation 12:9 as the devil and his angels. Isaiah 13:13, Ezekiel 38:20, Hosea 3:16 & Haggai 2:6 & 21.

They are shaken out of the heavens at the midpoint of the tribulation period and are cast into the lake of fire at the end of that time preceding the kingdom.

**Those things which cannot be shaken:** This is identified as a kingdom in the next verse:

**28 Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear: 29 For our God is a consuming fire.**

**Wherefore we receiving a kingdom:** If you get who the “we” are here wrong then you will be messed up doctrinally. Believing Israel (the little flock) will receive a kingdom, not the church, which is Christ’s body.

God will shake the earth as a winnower shakes out the chaff from the wheat, the believers who endured will enter into the rest of Israel’s long-awaited kingdom of rest while those who did not endure will be burnt up with the chaff in a consuming fire.

### Chapter Thirteen

#### The Everlasting Covenant

**1 Let brotherly love continue. 2 Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares.**

**Entertained angels unawares:** Angelic activity in the tribulation period will be as it was in the days of Abraham, all the way through the earthly ministry of Christ, and the early Acts period.

We are not entertaining angels unaware today in the dispensation of grace. Angels have a responsibility to protect believers who are not sealed by the holy Spirit as we are today.

We do not need to pray for a hedge of protection around us today, because we are sealed unto the day of redemption. Ephesians 4:30.

**3 Remember them that are in bonds, as bound with them; and them which suffer adversity, as being yourselves also in the body.**

**Them that are in bonds:** During the tribulation period many will be imprisoned for their faith and the believers then must remember them in prayer.

They should reach out to the imprisoned one’s family to see that they are taken care of because it will be impossible for believers to buy or sell in those days.

Believers will be expected to give of what they have. The writer declares that here that there were many in bonds at that time. Some think only Paul was in bonds in those days, which was not the case.

**In the body:** When someone is suffering adversity mentally, emotionally, or physically they are to remember them and help ease their suffering just as they would wish someone to do for them.

This is not a reference to the body of Christ but to their actual physical body.

**4 Marriage is honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.**

**The bed undefiled:** This is speaking of the marriage bed. Just because it is the tribulation period God will not be winking at adultery and fornication. God expects them to be examples in a time when evil will be running rampant.

**5 Let your conversation be without covetousness; and be content with such things as ye have: for he hath said,**

**I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee.** *Genesis 25:11.*

**6 So that we may boldly say,**

**The Lord is my helper, and I will not fear what man shall do unto me.** *Psalms 27:1 & 54:4.*

**Let your conversation be without covetousness:** If they talk about the things they don’t have, like Israel did in the wilderness, they will want to turn back from following God.

Covetousness will lead to stealing something that belongs to someone else. God will take care of his people during this time. God tells Israel to flee into the wilderness to a place he has prepared for them to provide for them.

**7 Remember them which have the rule over you, who have spoken unto you the word of God: whose faith follow, considering the end of their conversation. 8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.**

**Them which have the rule over you:** Here we see the position of a spiritual leader (ruler) that is over people during this time. In the tribulation period believers will be in a life-or-death situation.

Obedying them that have the spiritual rule over them could save their lives.

**Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever:** This saying is used totally out of context by many to say that spiritual gifts are for today. This is speaking about being submissive to leadership in any age, not gifts.

**9 Be not carried about with divers and strange doctrines. For it is a good thing that the heart be established with grace; not with meats, which have not profited them that have been occupied therein.**

**Divers and strange doctrines:** This epistle will help those in the tribulation see the strange doctrines that will be prevalent then for what they are. The writer tells them not to let them carry them about because they will carry them away to destruction.

**10 We have an altar, whereof they have no right to eat which serve the tabernacle.**

**We have an altar:** The believers in those times that flee into the wilderness have a better altar than those in the tabernacle.

**11 For the bodies of those beasts, whose blood is brought into the sanctuary by the high priest for sin, are burned without the camp. 12 Wherefore Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered without the gate. 13 Let us go forth therefore unto him without the camp, bearing his reproach. 14 For here have we no continuing city, but we seek one to come.**

Abraham was a sojourner in the land of Israel because he was looking for a city that was promised to him, and to his descendants, whose builder and maker was God. The city of new Jerusalem. Revelation 21.

That city is said to be sought after by Israel here in the tribulation period, and it is to come in the kingdom when the kingdom of heaven comes to the kingdoms of this earth.

**Let us go forth therefore unto him without the camp, bearing his reproach:** Jesus suffered outside the gate, and so believers in that day must be willing to bear Christ's reproach and suffer without the camp (as those that will be living in hiding at that time).

That is where the people will be sanctified, because that is where Jesus will be. He will not be in the antichrist's tabernacle in Jerusalem.

**15 By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name. 16 But to do good and to communicate forget not: for with such sacrifices God is well pleased.**

**Let us offer the sacrifice of praise:** They will be offering actual animal sacrifices back at the temple on an altar, and the writer encourages the believing Jew in that day to offer spiritual sacrifices to God while they are without the camp.

**To communicate:** This means to provide financially for those that are in need, and for those in spiritual positions of leadership.

**17 Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.**

Compare that with what Paul tells us in Romans 14:12.

**18 Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly. 19 But I beseech you the rather to do this, that I may be restored to you the sooner.**

**That I may be restored to you the sooner:** Here the writer wants to be restored to his fellow Hebrew readers, whom he had been ministering to for some time.

Since Paul was sent to the Gentiles, this verse about the writer wanting to get back to his Jewish readers implies that it wasn't him, as he is the apostle of the Gentiles. Romans 11:13.

Paul was sent to the uncircumcised. In all his epistles he never asks people to pray that he would be released, but that an utterance would be given unto him to make known the mystery of Christ wherever he was imprisoned at.

**20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, 21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.**

**That great shepherd of the sheep:** Paul never uses the word "shepherd" in any of his thirteen epistles to the body of Christ. Israel is called sheep all the time in the scriptures.

The believing remnant is referred to as the little flock in Luke 12:32. Psalm 23:1-2 & 80:1. The body of Christ is a body, not a herd of sheep in a sheepfold. Paul never uses the word sheep relating to us.

In Romans 8:36 Paul quotes Psalm 44:22 concerning Israel, and he compares believers in this dispensation with Israel in the past.

**The blood of the everlasting covenant:** This is for Israel who was under the old covenant, and will be under the new covenant. The body of Christ is not under any covenant, nor ever has been. We are saved by grace, not by a covenant.

**22 And I beseech you, brethren, suffer the word of exhortation: for I have written a letter unto you in few words. 23 Know ye that our brother Timothy is set at liberty; with whom, if he come shortly, I will see you.**

**Our brother Timothy:** There are just as many reasons to believe this is the Timothy of I and II Timothy, as to believe it is not the same Timothy.

Timothy was Paul's assistant, called an apostle by Paul along with Silas, and because their ministry was to the Gentiles, and not to the Jews many believe it was not the same Timothy.

**24 Salute all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints. They of Italy salute you. 25 Grace be with you all. Amen.**

**They of Italy salute you:** This mention here implies that the writer was in Italy at the time this epistle was written, which is why I believe the writer is most likely Luke the Physician.

Hebrews is not a treatise (a legal document written for Paul's defense in Rome), but an epistle for those future kingdom saints that would be going through some of the same things, and worse, than those of the first century believers.

Luke writes his Treatise to Theopolis who was a Roman official. Hebrews however is written to a nation of people that will have to go through the most terrible time the world will have ever seen, so God gives them scriptures in advance to help them through this time.

Who better to write this book than Luke, because he understood better than anyone else the programs to Israel, and to the body of Christ?

Hebrews serves as a transitional book back to the kingdom program for the nation of Israel just before Jesus sets up his earthly kingdom.

The doctrine in Hebrews alone proves Paul did not write this epistle, for its doctrine is to the Hebrews, or as Paul calls them, "the circumcision" in many of his epistles, and Paul is the apostle of the Gentiles, which are called the uncircumcision.

Jesus is the head of the body of Christ in Paul's epistles, and in Hebrews its writer tells us, that Jesus is its recipient's High Priest. Paul's epistles are very Gentile in their makeup, while this book is totally Jewish in its makeup.

The closing of Hebrews is identical to most the closings of Paul's epistles (Romans-Philemon) in that he ends with some variation of "grace be with you" and for this reason, and others, some claim Paul is its author.

This is not a proof it is just a similarity. No judge would rule in your favor if this were part of your evidence because it is only circumstantial evidence.

If you are 100% convinced that this is proof that Paul wrote Hebrews, then turn to Revelation 22:21 and read that verse and tell me if that also proves that Paul wrote the book of the Revelation.

It says the same thing Paul says at the end of his epistles. So that is an argument somewhat supporting Paul, but it is not conclusive at all.

What is conclusive is what is stated in chapter two verse three that proves the author is not Paul. Go back and reread it if you need to.

**The End**

## James

### Chapter One

#### My Brethren

### 1 James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad, greeting.

**James:** This was the Lord's half-brother who did not believe that Jesus was the Christ until after his half-brother's resurrection. He did believe soon afterwards because we see him in the upper room with his mother and brothers:

*Acts 1:14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brethren.*

Paul later says that Jesus appeared privately to James in 1st Corinthians:

*1st Corinthians 15:7 After that, he was seen of James; then of all the apostles.*

This is a possible reason why James ends up being an Elder in the church in Jerusalem. James was called to stay put in Jerusalem. What reason would Jesus have for speaking to his half-brother in private, and not his other brothers.

I believe it was to tell him of his future role as the leader of the church in Jerusalem, and his need to write the book that goes by his name to the twelve tribes that would soon be scattered abroad.

It is highly likely that this epistle is written prior to Saul of Tarsus getting saved on the road to Damascus in Acts 9. Notice the position of authority he has according to Peter:

*Acts 12:17 But he, beckoning unto them with the hand to hold their peace, declared unto them how the Lord had brought him out of the prison. And he said, Go shew these things unto James, and to the brethren. And he departed, and went into another place.*

It is James, and Peter, who instruct the believers in the Jerusalem church about Paul and Barnabas' ministering to the Gentiles in Acts 15:13-21.

It is also in this conclusion of James that we see that the kingdom saints in Jerusalem recognized that the Gentiles did not have to be under the law of Moses as they were.

*Acts 21:17 And when we were come to Jerusalem, the brethren received us gladly. 18 And the day following Paul went in with us unto James; and all the elders were present. 19 And when he had saluted them, he declared particularly what things God had wrought among the Gentiles by his ministry. 20 And when they heard it, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, Thou seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law: 21 And they are informed of thee, that thou teachest all the Jews which are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise their children, neither to walk after the customs. 22 What is it therefore? the multitude must needs come together: for they will hear that thou art come. 23 Do therefore this that we say to thee: We have four men which have a vow on them; 24 Them take, and purify thyself with them, and be at charges with them, that they may shave their heads; and all may know that those things, whereof they were informed concerning*

*thee, are nothing; but that thou thyself also walkest orderly, and keepst the law.*

Paul also mentions visiting with James when he went to Jerusalem initially in the book of Galatians:

*Galatians 1:18 Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter, and abode with him fifteen days. 19 But other of the apostles saw I none, save James the Lord's brother.*

This previous meeting with James and Paul probably played a role in their second meeting that occurred in Acts 15 when the Jerusalem council took place.

Galatians chapter two speaks about the council meeting and its conclusions in greater detail as well.

**A servant:** The little flock in Jesus' day, and in the time of Jacob's trouble are called servants. Revelation 1:3.

**To the twelve tribes which are scattered abroad:** The book is written to the twelve tribes of Israel! Just like the book of Hebrews was written to the Hebrews!

They are mentioned here as being scattered abroad. When was there a scattering in James' day? Upon the persecution that arose concerning Stephen:

*Acts 11:19 Now they which were scattered abroad upon the persecution that arose about Stephen travelled as far as Phenice, and Cyprus, and Antioch, preaching the word to none but unto the Jews only.*

Why to the Jews only? First of all, when the Jews were scattered in Acts 8 the apostles had no idea about the changes that were about to take place.

They definitely did not expect that the chief of sinners, Saul of Tarsus would get saved, and that God would make him the apostle of the Gentiles.

They were still going to the same people God had originally called them to go and reach, because Israel was to rise before they would take the word to the Gentiles. Isaiah 60:3.

God had promised to scatter the Jews whenever they were disobedient to his law. Deuteronomy 32:26.

#### My Brethren

### 2 My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations; 3 Knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience.

**My brethren:** James and the apostles all agreed in Galatians to limit their ministry to the circumcision (The Jews), and that Paul would go to the heathen in all nations.

*Galatians 2:9 And when James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given unto me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship; that we should go unto the heathen, and they unto the circumcision.*

**Count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations:** James tells them that many temptations will try to trip them up because the devil wants to destroy their testimony.

They should rejoice however because God was turning that negative into a positive to strengthen their faith by teaching them patience.

The tribulation saints will have many temptations (like taking the mark of the Beast) that they must endure, and this epistle as well as all the Hebrew epistles were written to strengthen those tribulation saints.

**The trying of your faith worketh patience:** Trials strengthen your faith.

The greatest trial that will ever come upon Israel will be the time of Jacob's trouble. That tribulation period is spoken about in Jeremiah 30:7 and the book of the Revelation.

**4 But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.**

**Let patience have her perfect work:** If a person over time has learned to be patient through their tempting's they will be made perfect/complete (mature).

They are not made sinless, but perfect. The word "perfect" means a finished or completed project. God knows what they, and we need (i.e...) patience, and he teaches both us and them patience while we endure the temptations before us.

The enduring is easier to endure if we can realize that God is strengthening us to handle other things in the future that Satan will throw our way and that should produce joy.

**5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.** *Proverbs 2 & Matthew 7:7.*

**6 But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. 7 For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord. 8 A double minded man is unstable in all his ways.**

James teaches these kingdom believers that the way to receive wisdom is to ask God for it. This book is not written to us today, it was written to the remnant of kingdom believers in the first century.

James was writing this epistle soon after the scattering of the Jerusalem saints, so his Jewish brothers and sisters could know how to live in such a perilous time.

They would be tempted by their countrymen to return to the old system of sacrifices at the temple, which would mean that they would be denying that Christ was the fulfillment of them.

They needed patience and wisdom, and God wanted to give it to them. This book is also a message on how to survive a future scattering of the nation of Israel when they are fleeing the antichrist in the tribulation period.

It is not an epistle to the church today. It is a Hebrew epistle. We can glean from it, and make practical applications from it, but the doctrine in it disagrees with the clear teachings of the apostle of the Gentiles.

It is for Israel under a different dispensation. We are the church which is Christ's body, under the mystery program which was kept secret before the world began. Romans 16:25 & Ephesians 3.

**9 Let the brother of low degree rejoice in that he is exalted: 10 But the rich, in that he is made low: because as the flower of the grass he shall pass away. 11 For the sun is no sooner risen with a burning heat, but it withereth the grass, and the flower thereof falleth, and the grace of the fashion of it perisheth: so also shall the rich man fade away in his ways.**

**Let the brother of low degree rejoice in that he is exalted:** He is exalted to the same level as everyone else. When kingdom saints sold all that they had to follow Christ distribution was made to the low/poor.

**The rich, in that he is made low:** The rich believer is to rejoice in that he is made low, humbled to the same level as everyone should be.

Remember that in the kingdom program that these Jews were under in the early Acts period where they had to sell all that they had, and distribution was made by the apostles so that all were equal.

This exalted the person who had little and humbled the person who had much and both of them needed advice on how to deal with that kingdom program of equality.

Notice that it is the rich person that is made low that gets, the extra instruction that everything is going to perish.

**12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.**

**Blessed is the man that endureth temptation:** What is the result of not enduring the temptation to return to Judaism, or not enduring the temptation of taking the mark of the beast in the tribulation period for these Jews? Damnation!

*Matthew 10:22 And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.* Matthew 24:13 and Mark 13:13.

All three of these verses refer to Israel going through the tribulation period, not us living out our daily lives in the dispensation of grace today.

**He shall receive the crown of life:** Those that endure temptation are given entrance into the long-awaited kingdom of heaven that shall dwell on earth immediately after the time of Jacob's trouble. Revelation 2:10.

**Which the Lord hath promised to them that love him:** *Luke 22:28-30.*

**13 Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted of God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth he any man:**

Abraham was tempted by God, not to sin, but to trust God by faith in his word.

#### The trail of temptation

**14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. 15 Then when lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death.**

**Drawn away of his own lust, and enticed:** God is absolute holiness, and in him is no sin. He does not use sin to test believers in any age. You are tempted by the very fact that you are born a sinner.

**Then when lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin:** What was it that Adam lusted for? We know what Eve lusted for because scriptures plainly tell us, but what about Adam who was there with her?

*Genesis 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.*

Eve ate the fruit first, and then she gave it to Adam who knew better, but he became desirous of the knowledge that Eve now had. Adam wanted to become as gods knowing good and evil after Eve had done so.

And he lusted after that knowledge, and when his lust conceived it produced his sin, then Adam received the wages of his sin that God had warned him about, which was death, and that has passed down to all of us.

**And sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death:** The wages of sin is death, Romans 6:23 says. We inherited our sin nature from Adam and Eve, and we naturally give in to our sinful flesh.

God did not give mankind his sinful flesh, he chose to sin. Adam didn't have the same lust that we have today at the time when he chose to listen to Satan instead of God.

**16 Do not err, my beloved brethren. 17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.**

**The Father of lights:** This means that he is not just the originator and giver of every good gift, but he also created light. "Let there be light" Adam is called the son of God because God created him.

Angels are called the sons of God because God created them also which makes God their Father through Creation, not through birth as some wrongly teach.

God is the Creator of all the lights no matter where they are and he himself is the light where there is absolutely no shadow regardless of where God is. God does not cast a shadow, only light.

**Of his own will begat he us**

**18 Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures.**

**Of his own will begat he us:** It was God's will that those who believed the gospel of the kingdom would be begotten of God (become his children). This was the same thing that Jesus spoke about to Nicodemus in John chapter three:

*John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. 4 Nicodemus saith unto him, How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born? 5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. 6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. 7 Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again. 8 The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.*

**With the word of truth:** The word of truth that begat a Jew into becoming one of God's children was that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God. Matthew 16:16-18.

**That we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures:** James tells the kingdom saints of the first century that they are a kind of first fruits of his creatures.

That also means that there are many more fruits to follow, which is a reference to all those Jews that will be won to Christ through the kingdom gospel in the tribulation period.

*Matthew 24:14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.*

**19 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath: 20 For the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of God.**

**My beloved brethren:** Twice this title is used in two verses that are separated by only one other verse to let you know that James is talking to his beloved brethren, the Jews, and that he wants them to remember that they are beloved.

**21 Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls.**

Because God begat them by the word of truth they should lay apart all filthiness because it is not a family trait that they inherited from their heavenly Father who begat them, so they should emulate their new Father, and not their old father the Devil.

**Lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness:** Unnecessary actions, wasteful, sinful.

**Receive with meekness the engrafted word:** The word of God is not just some random bits of information to store in their memories, but it engrafts itself to their soul and it will save them if they humble themselves.

**22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. 23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: 24 For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was.**

James is just now introducing something here that was always known by the Jews in "the Jews Religion:" and that is the place of works in their faith.

We know what Ephesians 2:8-9 says to us today in the church Age, but the Jews in the Jews religion (Judaism) had a requirement that works (things that you do) accompanied their faith. They were outward manifestations of the inner faith that they had.

If a person in the old testament believed God's word, then they would act on his word by offering the necessary sacrifices because by faith he believed he would receive the covering of his sins if he acted on his faith.

Chapter two deals with this in much greater detail and has caused confusion to untold millions because they have never learned how to rightly divide the word of truth.

The Hebrew epistles were not written to the church, which is Christ's body, they were written to the kingdom saints of the first century and those in the tribulation period.

Until you understand this you will continue to be tossed to and fro about what to believe today and will continually blend law and grace.

**Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves:** Jesus gave Israel's leaders a perfect parable that described them to a tee as being hearers of the word and not doers.



It also perfectly described the reaction of the publicans and harlots which heard his word and obeyed it:

*Matthew 21:23 And when he was come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came unto him as he was teaching, and said, By what authority doest thou these things? and who gave thee this authority? 24 And Jesus answered and said unto them, I also will ask you one thing, which if ye tell me, I in like wise will tell you by what authority I do these things. 25 The baptism of John, whence was it? from heaven, or of men? And they reasoned with themselves, saying, If we shall say, From heaven; he will say unto us, Why did ye not then believe him? 26 But if we shall say, Of men; we fear the people; for all hold John as a prophet. 27 And they answered Jesus, and said, We cannot tell. And he said unto them, Neither tell I you by what authority I do these things. 28 But what think ye? A certain man had two sons; and he came to the first, and said, Son, go work to day in my vineyard. 29 He answered and said, I will not: but afterward he repented, and went. 30 And he came to the second, and said likewise. And he answered and said, I go, sir: and went not. 31 Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, The first. Jesus saith unto them, Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you. 32 For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and ye believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and ye, when ye had seen it, repented not afterward, that ye might believe him.*

**25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.**

**The perfect law of liberty:** The publicans and harlots looked into it in Jesus' day and many of them continued therein, while the chief priests and elders did not look into Jesus' words, nor were they doers of his word.

They didn't sell all that they had to come and follow him as the common people did, looking for the coming kingdom he was preaching.

James is warning his hearers not to be like the chief priests and elders who looked good on the outside, but to be like the publicans and harlots who heard the word engrafted in them and were begotten of God.

The sermon on the mount in Matthew 5-7 was a great example of the perfect law of liberty. Israel will be blessed by being allowed entrance into their kingdom. They will also be blessed in that kingdom for doing, and not just hearing the word of God. James 2:12.

**26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion is vain.**

**If any man among you seem to be religious:** The chief priests and elders seemed to be religious at first sight, but when you listened to them and watched them, their religion was empty, because they rejected the truth, for their own tradition.

What is religion? It is mentioned only five times in the Bible, and it is simply a system of beliefs that a person maintains.

But God established only one religion (Judaism) and Satan has duplicated that with thousands of variations adding to it or taking away from it.

Replacement theology stems from not rightly dividing the word of truth and claiming Israel's promises and doctrines as our own. You and I are not Israel, and we were never under the law. We are under grace today!

The Jewish religion changed as promised in the scriptures with its Christ coming and fulfilling its promises and a Jewish believer that believed in their Messiah would be considered a completed Jew.

James was simply continuing on the religion started by God with the Jewish people. We are not in a religion today in the dispensation of grace as the Jews were and will be again in the tribulation period.

We have a personal relationship with Jesus Christ today and are a part of an un-prophesied time period not mentioned in the Bible until after Paul was saved. Romans 16:25 and Ephesians 3.

**27 Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep himself unspotted from the world.**

**Pure religion:** These are instructions for the kingdom saints in the first century, and for the tribulation saints.

To be a fatherless child, and a widow during the tribulation period will be awful, and God calls upon the saints that have the means to assist others less fortunate.

## Chapter Two

### Can faith save him?

**1 My brethren, have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with respect of persons. 2 For if there come unto your assembly a man with a gold ring, in goodly apparel, and there come in also a poor man in vile raiment; 3 And ye have respect to him that weareth the gay clothing, and say unto him, Sit thou here in a good place; and say to the poor, Stand thou there, or sit here under my footstool: 4 Are ye not then partial in yourselves, and are become judges of evil thoughts?**

**My brethren:** Chapter two begins much the same way as chapter one minus what is needed for the cover of any letter.

The name of the author of the letter James, and the name(s) of the intended recipients of the letter (the twelve tribes scattered abroad). James is writing to "his brethren," Israel.

**Have not the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ:** Notice this is not faith in the Lord, but the faith of the Lord Jesus Christ.

This is speaking about the hearers having Christ's faith. The faith of Jesus Christ did not have respect to rich at the expense of the poor.

**The Lord of glory:** *1st Corinthians 2:8.*

**Respect of persons:** Why would you prefer a rich man over a poor man in your assembly? Inside your heart (which is desperately wicked) you want what the rich can offer you.

It's natural, but we are called to die to our flesh (sin nature) and see all people alike as equal in God's eyes.

The rich man has many friends, but he never knows which ones are real until he is broke, while the poor man who has few friends, has true friends.

**5 Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?**

**My beloved brethren:** James, just like Peter and John, all quote the Lord in his earthly ministry as a basis for their doctrine to the circumcision believers scattered abroad after the persecution of Stephen.

Notice that there is no promise of a heavenly destiny to their hearers, only an entrance into an earthly kingdom.

**Heirs of the kingdom:** Israel was never promised a home in heavenly places in the old testament, the gospels, or in any of the nine Hebrew epistles that end the Bible, Hebrews through Revelation.

They all speak about an earthly destiny for Israel. It is Paul's writings, and his writings alone, that promise a home in heaven for all who believe in this dispensation of grace.

*Matthew 5:3 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.* Luke 6:20.

**Which he hath promised to them that love him:** Exodus 20:6, Deuteronomy 5:10, Proverbs 8:17, John 14:15-28 & 16:27.

**6 But ye have despised the poor. Do not rich men oppress you, and draw you before the judgment seats? 7 Do not they blaspheme that worthy name by the which ye are called?**

Remember the words of Christ when he said, "It is harder for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God. This is not heaven we are talking about, but Israel's kingdom.

Jesus told the rich young ruler to sell all that he had and come follow him, but he left because he had much riches. He couldn't depart from the things of this world to gain entrance into Israel's promised kingdom.

We are not told to sell all that we have today in the dispensation of grace because we have a heavenly destiny, but that doesn't mean we should hoard things and not be a blessing to others with the things the Lord has allowed us to acquire. We should bless others and our local churches.

**Ye have despised the poor:** Judas Iscariot once made a telling statement concerning the poor, which Jesus immediately corrected, because he knew Judas' heart:

*John 12:5 Why was not this ointment sold for three hundred pence, and given to the poor? 6 This he said, not that he cared for the poor; but because he was a thief, and had the bag, and bare what was put therein.*

Judas will not see the kingdom of heaven come down to the earth, nor inherit the promises, because he did not care for the poor, but was a lying thief.

**8 If ye fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well: 9 But if ye have respect to persons, ye commit sin, and are convinced of the law as transgressors.** *Leviticus 19:18.*

**The royal law:** It is called the royal law because Royalty gave it to a royal priesthood, and he lived it perfectly for three and a half years.

Once again, we see how serious God is against those who show favoritism to the rich and the powerful.

*1st Peter 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:*

**10 For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. 11 For he that said,**

**Do not commit adultery,**

**said also,**

**Do not kill.**

**Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law.** *Exodus 20:13-14.*

**12 So speak ye, and so do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty.**

**The law of liberty:** During the tribulation period, it is imperative that believers act like Christ to their fellow believers as they will not be able to buy or sell unless they have the mark of the beast. James 1:25.

**13 For he shall have judgment without, that hath shewed no mercy; and mercy rejoiceth against judgment.** *Matthew 7:1-2.*

**14 What doth it profit, my brethren, though a man say he hath faith, and have not works? can faith save him? 15 If a brother or sister be naked, and destitute of daily food, 16 And one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be ye warmed and filled; notwithstanding ye give them not those things which are needful to the body; what doth it profit? 17 Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.**

Notice that James contradicts Paul in Romans here but there really is no contradiction if you will just rightly divide your Bible.

The Hebrew epistles are written to the Hebrews that were still under the kingdom program in the first century.

They are also written for them in the tribulation period after the dispensation of grace ends at the Rapture of Christ's body (the church).

**18 Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works.** *Matthew 7:24-27.*

Just as we today have to continually teach and remind people that we are under grace today and not the law, so too will these tribulation saints have to remind others that they are not a part of the body of Christ because they will have already been raptured.

The tribulation saints are back under the law just like they were before the body of Christ started back in Paul's day. They will show their faith by their works during the tribulation period!

**19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.** *Malachi 2:10 & 12:32.*

**The devils also believe, and tremble:** *Mark 1:24.*

*Mark 1:24 Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.*

**20 But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead? 21 Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar? 22 Seest thou how faith wrought with his works, and by works was faith made perfect?**

**Faith without works is dead:** Works do not make faith perfect today in the dispensation of grace. Ephesians teaches us that salvation is not of works, while Romans 11:6 tells us, it is no more of works.

Both of these are epistles for the dispensation of grace, and not for the tribulation period, while Hebrews through Revelation are all tribulation epistles and things are different in those times.

They will be the same way they were in the first century while the kingdom program was still in operation amongst the Jewish Remnant.

**23 And the scripture was fulfilled which saith,**

**Abraham believed God, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness: and he was called the Friend of God.** Genesis 15:6, Romans 4:3 and Galatians 3:6.

**He was called the Friend of God:** 2nd Chronicles 20:7 and Isaiah 41:8.

**24 Ye see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only. 25 Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way? 26 For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.** *Joshua 6:17-25 & Hebrews 11:31.*

**Was not Rahab the harlot justified by works:** They mean what they say to the people they are written too. They are written to those under the law of Moses who are still in Israel's kingdom program back in the first century, and to those going through the tribulation period.

If you compare James with Romans when they both talk about when Abraham is justified and when they both chose two different stories that happen at very different times to prove their point.

Both are correct, but both are different, because Abraham was before the law, and he is the Father of the Jewish Nation that was later under the law. He is also the Father of all of them that believe but in a different way than he was to Israel.

Compare what Paul and James says about Abraham and justification in Romans 4. They are not saying the same things because they are both speaking to two different groups in two different dispensations.

### The Tongue

**1 My brethren, be not many masters, knowing that we shall receive the greater condemnation.** *Matthew 6:24.*

### The Tongue

**2 For in many things we offend all. If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man, and able also to bridle the whole body.**

**Offend not in word:** This is what someone does with their tongue. See both the books of Psalms and Proverbs for much teaching concerning the tongue.

**3 Behold, we put bits in the horses' mouths, that they may obey us; and we turn about their whole body.** *Psalm 32:9.*

**4 Behold also the ships, which though they be so great, and are driven of fierce winds, yet are they turned about with a very small helm, whithersoever the governor listeth. 5 Even so the tongue is a little member, and boasteth great things. Behold, how great a matter a little fire kindleth! 6 And the tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity: so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell. 7 For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and hath been tamed of mankind: 8 But the tongue can no man tame; it is an unruly evil, full of deadly poison.** *Proverbs 16:27 & Psalm 140:3.*

**9 Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of God.** *Genesis 1:26-27.*

**10 Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be. 11 Doth a fountain send forth at the same place sweet water and bitter? 12 Can the fig tree, my brethren, bear olive berries? either a vine, figs? so can no fountain both yield salt water and fresh. 13 Who is a wise man and endued with knowledge among you? let him shew out of a good conversation his works with meekness of wisdom.** *James 2:18.*

**14 But if ye have bitter envying and strife in your hearts, glory not, and lie not against the truth. 15 This wisdom descendeth not from above, but is earthly, sensual, devilish. 16 For where envying and strife is, there is confusion and every evil work. 17 But the wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, and easy to be intreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy.** *Proverbs 2:6.*

**18 And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace.** *Psalm 85:10-14.*

**Chapter Four**  
**The enemy of God**

**1 From whence come wars and fightings among you? come they not hence, even of your lusts that war in your members? 2 Ye lust, and have not: ye kill, and desire to have, and cannot obtain: ye fight and war, yet ye have not, because ye ask not. 3 Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts. 4 Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.** *1st John 2:15-17.*

**Ye adulterers and adulteresses:** James calls the twelve tribes that are scattered abroad in those days and those in the tribulation period adulterers and adulteresses.

This is because they choose to love the world and not him, just like Gomer (a type of the nation of Israel who committed spiritual adultery against God) who committed adultery against Hosea. Hosea 1:2.

If they do not choose to suffer for his name's sake and instead choose to do whatever the rest of the world is doing, they will end up taking the mark of the beasts, which is the ultimate act of spiritual adultery from which there is no forgiveness.

**5 Do ye think that the scripture saith in vain, The spirit that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy? 6 But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith,**

**God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble.**

**7 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.** *Psalm 138:6 & Proverbs 3:34.*

*1st Peter 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: 9 Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. 10 But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.*

**8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.** *Hebrews 7:19 & 1st Peter 1:22.*

**9 Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness.** *Matthew 5:4.*

**10 Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up.**

*1st Peter 5:6 Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time:*

**11 Speak not evil one of another, brethren. He that speaketh evil of his brother, and judgeth his brother, speaketh evil of the law, and judgeth the law: but if thou judge the law, thou art not a doer of the law, but a judge. 12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who art thou that judgest another?** *Mark 7:1 & James 2:8.*

**The Lord's will**

**13 Go to now, ye that say, To day or to morrow we will go into such a city, and continue there a year, and buy and sell, and get gain: 14 Whereas ye know not what shall be on the morrow. For what is your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away. 15 For that ye ought to say, If the Lord will, we shall live, and do this, or that. 16 But now ye rejoice in your boastings: all such rejoicing is evil. 17 Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth it not, to him it is sin.**

**If the Lord will:** A familiar saying today by many who use it out of its context. God's will is revealed for us today in the dispensation of grace today by following the word written for us today.

God is not using signs for us today to prove his will. We are not Israel looking for signs to find God's will. No laying out a fleece today.

**Chapter Five**  
**Fall into condemnation**

**1 Go to now, ye rich men, weep and howl for your miseries that shall come upon you. 2 Your riches are corrupted, and your garments are moth eaten. 3 Your gold and silver is cankered; and the rust of them shall be a witness against you, and shall eat your flesh as it were fire. Ye have heaped treasure together for the last days.** *2nd Timothy 2:17.*

**4 Behold, the hire of the labourers who have reaped down your fields, which is of you kept back by fraud, crieth: and the cries of them which have reaped are entered into the ears of the Lord of sabaoth. 5 Ye have lived in pleasure on the earth, and been wanton; ye have nourished your hearts, as in a day of slaughter. 6 Ye have condemned and killed the just; and he doth not resist you.**

**Cankered:** Eaten.

**The Lord of Sabaoth:** This is a military term for a conqueror. Isaiah 1:9 & Romans 9:29. When the Lord returns there will be vengeance against the oppressor.

Wrongs will be made right. Evil will be dealt with. Those who have suffered will be rewarded in the kingdom. How will a rich man have all of these goods during the tribulation period? He will

have to receive the mark of the Beast, and those that do will all be damned.

**7 Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.**

**Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord:** His coming to set up his kingdom, not the rapture.

*Matthew 24:13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.*

*Luke 21:19 In your patience possess ye your souls.*

**The husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth:** Christ is the husbandman, and he must wait as well for the last of the fruit to ripen with the latter rain from God. But rest assured he will come.

This will be a comfort to those suffering knowing that their deliverer is being patient as well, not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.

**The early and latter rain:** Christ received the early rain in the first century with those that made up the "Little Flock" of kingdom saints lead by the apostles.

The fruit from the latter rain will be a result of all those saved in the tribulation period by the preaching of the 144,000 and the two witnesses as well as other believers in that time. Hosea 6:3.

**8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.**

No delays for a prophesied dispensation of grace once the tribulation period begins. The return of Christ will once again be soon, and the Kingdom will be at hand literally.

Patience is what will be needed for these tribulation saints to endure unto the end. Matthew 3:2.

When reading the book of James, one only has to rightly divide the word of truth to understand how James could say the coming of the Lord draweth nigh since there has been a 2,000-year delay.

It is because the dispensation of grace was not known until it was revealed unto Paul. This book was written before Paul received the revelation of the mystery concerning the body of Christ, and the dispensation of grace.

**9 Grudge not one against another, brethren, lest ye be condemned: behold, the judge standeth before the door. 10 Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience. 11 Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy.**

**Lest ye be condemned:** *John 3:19.*

*John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.*

**The patience of Job:** James confirms that the story of Job is a type of the Nation of Israel enduring the tribulation period. Job suffered

like no other person I ever knew, and he was rewarded double afterwards.

Those that suffer in the tribulation period will be compensated by Christ. Hebrews 11:32-40 & Matthew 24:13.

**12 But above all things, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, neither by the earth, neither by any other oath: but let your yea be yea; and your nay, nay; lest ye fall into condemnation.**

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor is the ninth commandment given to the nation of Israel. The penalty for violating this is steep in the tribulation period. Exaggeration, swearing (making oaths) etc., all receive stiff punishment during this time.

Notice the similarities between what James says, and the words of Jesus to the lost sheep of the house of Israel while he walked among them preaching the gospel of the kingdom:

*Matthew 5:34 But I say unto you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven; for it is God's throne: 35 Nor by the earth; for it is his footstool: neither by Jerusalem; for it is the city of the great King. 36 Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black. 37 But let your communication be, Yea, yea; Nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil.*

**13 Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms. 14 Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord: 15 And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him. 16 Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.**

**The prayer of faith shall save the sick:** As Jesus healed all in Israel from their infirmities, so will Jews be healed in the tribulation period so that they can enter into the kingdom and fulfill their roles as a nation of priests. Exodus 19:5-6.

Your elders cannot do this today, no matter how much anointing oil they use, or how fervent their prayers are. Priests were to be anointed with oil before they could begin their ministry under the law. Exodus 28:41.

**17 Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain: and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months. 18 And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain, and the earth brought forth her fruit.**

Prayer for the believer in the tribulation Period that is truly seeking God's will and not their own will be answered and answered immediately. Because the need will be great in those days, the response will also be great.

**19 Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; 20 Let him know, that he which**

**converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall save a soul from death, and shall hide a multitude of sins.**

James is writing to his brethren, the Jews, and many will be led astray by the wicked one in the last days. God still wants his people to reach out to those who have erred in the faith to try to convert those people to save them from eternal death.

This verse teaches that it is the sins of the one needing conversion that shall have his sins hidden, besides the fact that this is not written to us today in the dispensation of grace.

*Ephesians 3:2 If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:*

**The End**

## First Peter

### Chapter One

#### The Strangers Scattered

#### **1 Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia,**

In Acts 2:9-11 we read about Jews from Pontus, Cappadocia and Asia present on the day of Pentecost.

**An apostle of Jesus Christ:** A sent one. He was chosen in Matthew 10:1-7.

**To the strangers scattered throughout:** Peter wrote this epistle to his Jewish brethren that were strangers to the Gentiles they were living among. Acts 2:9, 8:1 & 11:19.

Saul did not stop his persecution at the death of Stephen, he went after the Messianic church with great hatred.

This helps us to determine when the epistle was written because if the saints in Jerusalem scattered into these regions, then the apostles had the responsibility to relay God's word to them to aid them in their walk.

How could Israel be scattered into the nations if God promised to establish his kingdom with them in the land?

Because they disobeyed God's covenant, and crucified their king, so God did what he said he would do if the nation got to that point. He scattered them:

*Leviticus 26:31 And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours. 32 And I will bring the land into desolation: and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it. 33 And I will scatter you among the heathen, and will draw out a sword after you: and your land shall be desolate, and your cities waste.*

The doctrines found in the Hebrew epistles (Hebrews through Revelation), also prove an early dating as they differed greatly from Paul's epistles written later but were in perfect harmony with the four gospels and Acts 1-8.

Paul wanted to go into Asia and into Bithynia in Acts 16:6-7, after passing through the region of Galatia, but he was forbidden to go there.

That is where Peter and the circumcision believers were working with some of the little flock (Luke 12:32) that had scattered too, who had gone to Jerusalem in Acts 2 on the day of Pentecost and were saved.

Paul said that he would not build on another man's foundation. Romans 15:20.

#### **2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.**

**Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father:** All of the "strangers" (believing Israel) that were scattered, that believed that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God, were elected to be sanctified through the Spirit, not to be saved.

Peter later tells his same audience (believing Israel) at the beginning of his second epistle to make their calling and election sure. 2nd Peter 1:10.

**Unto obedience:** This is Christ's obedience on the cross. The sprinkling of blood is Christ offering his blood in the holy place in heaven.

*Hebrews 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; 12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. 13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: 14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? 15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance. 16 For where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator.* Hebrews 12:18-29.

**And sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ:** *Hebrews 11:28 & 12:24.*

**Grace be unto you, and peace be multiplied:** This is similar, yet different from Paul's opening statement in all thirteen of his epistles written to the body of Christ.

Paul never uses the word "multiplied" and Peter does in the opening of both of his epistles. 2nd Peter 1:2.

#### **3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy hath begotten us again unto a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,**

**Begotten us again:** To be begotten again (born again), means that these Jews collectively must have been begotten sometime in the past first.

This is a reference to their being born as a nation when they came out of Egypt, when they received the law at Mt. Sinai. They were begotten again by believing that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God. John 3:3-8.

**Unto a lively hope:** This is their resurrection to live forever in their kingdom.

The hope of Israel is that even though they may die before the Lord returns to set up his kingdom they will be resurrected because Jesus Christ was. Acts 28:20 & 1st Peter 2:4-5.

Christ is called a "living stone rejected of men" and Peter's audience (the little flock of Israel scattered among the Gentiles) are called "lively stones."

#### **4 To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, 5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.**

**To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you:** Israel will get their national salvation when they go into their kingdom in the last time.

**Kept by the power of God through faith:** These kingdom believers are kept through faith by the power of God. John 10:27-30.

Unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time: Is a national salvation on the day of atonement as Israel's kingdom begins. Acts 3:19-21.

**6 Wherein ye greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations: 7 That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ:**

**Ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations:** These are the temptations that will befall people in the tribulation period to take the mark of the beast.

**The trial of your faith:** This is the ultimate trial Israel will face, and to fail it means to spend an eternity separated from God, while the opposite is true for those who pass this trial.

God has warned them before it comes upon them. They will have to heed his warning.

*Revelation 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.*

**Though it be tried with fire:** This is speaking about the tribulation period where Israel is purified through the fire. Job is a picture of the believing remnant coming through the tribulation period and receiving their reward double in the kingdom. 1st Peter 4:12.

*Malachi 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the LORD of hosts. 2 But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? for he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap: 3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the LORD an offering in righteousness. 4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the LORD, as in the days of old, and as in former years. 5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger from his right, and fear not me, saith the LORD of hosts. 6 For I am the LORD, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.*

**At the appearing of Jesus Christ:** This is the appearing of Jesus on the earth when every eye shall see him at the onset of the kingdom.

**8 Whom having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory: 9 Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.**

**Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls:** This is the salvation of believing Israel's souls that endure through the tribulation period. Our salvation in the dispensation of grace is a present possession.

**10 Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:**

**Of which salvation the prophets have enquired and searched diligently:** Salvation for Israel at the beginning of the kingdom.

**Who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:** The grace that Peter was writing about was prophesied in the prophets, this was not the dispensation of grace that Paul preached about.

Our grace today, was hidden in God from the beginning of the world, not mentioned in the prophets as part of the unsearchable riches of Christ. Ephesians 3:8-9.

*Jeremiah 31:31 Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: 32 Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was an husband unto them, saith the LORD: 33 But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the LORD, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people. 34 And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the LORD: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the LORD: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.*

The New Testament (which is not the books of Matthew through Revelation) is the prophesied grace that will come to Israel in her kingdom, and it is all about God doing a work in them, causing them to live for God, whereas the law was weak and could never do this.

**11 Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.**

**The sufferings of Christ:** Israel's prophets didn't understand everything they prophesied about, and they would search the scriptures to try to determine what manner of time (when) it would be that Christ would suffer. Isaiah 53 & 1st Peter 4:12-13.

**The glory that should follow:** His reigning in the earthly kingdom as King of kings, and Lord of lords.

They didn't see the dispensation of grace being ushered in interrupting Israel's program, so it clouded their understanding regarding the timing.

**12 Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.**

The angels didn't understand the gospel of the kingdom when it was preached in the gospels and early acts period, because God was offering the kingdom if Israel would repent. They don't understand the gospel of grace today either because they were not saved as we are.

They desire to look into those things they do not understand, just like we would like to look into what went on with them when a



third of them chose to follow Satan's path and two-thirds chose to follow God's way.

**13 Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;**

**The grace that is to be brought unto you:** The tribulation saints hope to the end of the tribulation period for their grace that doesn't come until Jesus Christ reveals himself to Israel just prior to setting up his kingdom on this earth.

**At the revelation of Jesus Christ:** See the book of the revelation, which reveals events leading up to his revelation to the world, and his kingdom that is to follow when he brings the prophesied grace to Israel in the kingdom.

**14 As obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your ignorance: 15 But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; 16 Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy. *Leviticus 11:44-45.***

They will need to be holy because as 1<sup>st</sup> John tells these tribulation saints that he which is born of God does not commit sin.

Someone who does not commit sin obviously lives a holy lifestyle. It is required of them, and they are given extra help in that short and terrible time to do just that.

This does not mean that they cannot sin, because there are all kinds of warnings to the believer in those days not to lose their faith, coupled with warnings that they are to endure unto the end etc.

**17 And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man's work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear: 18 Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; 19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:**

**Judgeth according to every man's work:** *Matthew 5:16.*

**Your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers:** Israel's leaders were, and will be again teaching (the vain conversation) the commandments of men for their doctrine:

*Matthew 15:8 This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. 9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.*

**With the precious blood of Christ:** This was the fulfillment of the type that the lamb represented. No lamb could ever redeem someone, but Christ who shed his spotless blood could.

**20 Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,**

*Revelation 13:8 In the book of the life of the lamb slain from the foundation of the world.*

**Who was foreordained before the foundation of the world:** Christ was foreordained to offer his sinless blood for sinful mankind before the foundation of the world, but he appeared to Israel in the beginning of their last days for them. 1st Peter 1:20.

**In these last times:** Peter tells us that Christ came and manifest himself to Israel "in these last times" as the kingdom would have come soon if Israel would have accepted Jesus when he came the first time.

Acts 2:17 and Hebrews 1:2 tell of the last days/times that will come to Israel after the rapture happens. Hebrews through Revelation are all written for Jews suffering in the tribulation period which are also called the last days.

**21 Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God. 22 Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently: 23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.**

**Being born again:** It is Israel that is "born again" by the word of God, not us. Israel was born the first time as a nation when they came out of Egypt, and they must be born again to enter into the kingdom prepared for them.

We in the dispensation of grace are born of God as well, but we are not born twice spiritually speaking as Israel is.

**24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away: 25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.**

The gospel is the good news of the soon coming kingdom. They are not preaching to the Jews scattered abroad the same thing that Paul preached, which was the gospel of the grace of God.

## Chapter Two

### A spiritual house, an holy priesthood

**1 Wherefore laying aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil speakings, 2 As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby: 3 If so be ye have tasted that the Lord is gracious.**

**The sincere milk of the word:** Hebrews 5:12-13. Just as babies desire their mother's milk, so ought new believers to desire the word of God.

**4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious, *1st Peter 2:5.***

**A living stone:** Jesus was not a dead lifeless stone, but a living stone that was rejected by Israel's leaders.

He will have his day in the kingdom when all will worship him for who he is, and for what he has done for them, because he is chosen of God, and precious. Matthew 21:42.

**Chosen of God:** Chosen to be the chief corner stone. 1st Peter 2:6.

**5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.**

Israel was the nation that was to offer up literal physical sacrifices until the living stone offered himself up for not just Israel, but for the whole world.

The remnant of believers that have been scattered abroad are not called living stones, but rather, lively stones.

**As lively stones:** Believing Israel were to do something, they were to be built up as a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices.

Not the physical ones which would be accepted because the living stone has received them (the lively stones) when they received him.

**A spiritual house:** Those who put others (strangers) ahead of themselves, will build a large spiritual house, as opposed to a physical house, like the house of Israel.

**A holy priesthood:** Peter tells these Jewish saints that are scattered abroad that they are a holy priesthood.

This goes hand and hand with what the children of Israel were told at Mount Sinai, that if they would keep his covenant (the old testament law) that they would be a holy priesthood, not the church, the body of Christ.

**To offer up spiritual sacrifices:** Giving, mercy, patience, love, friendship, humility etc., are acceptable sacrifices to him.

Peter is not addressing Gentiles in the body of Christ. There is no such thing as the priesthood of the believer in the dispensation of grace. God mentioned that the Children of Israel would become a kingdom of priests in the literal kingdom.

Here we have Peter writing to the Jews that have been scattered because of their rejection of God's word, as well as to those that were saints from Jerusalem who scattered at the persecution that arose concerning Stephen. Acts 8:1

**6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded. Isaiah 28:16.**

Jesus is referred to in the scripture as the rock, and also as the stone. He clears up any false teaching about who the real Rock is, it is Jesus, the chief corner stone, not Peter that the kingdom church is built upon.

**7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,**

Jesus is the precious stone that the little flock were trusting in, that were now scattered throughout the regions because of the persecution of believers by Saul of Tarsus.

Then later on by the leaders of Israel (Saul's replacements) that were trying to stop what was going on in Jerusalem. Isaiah 28:16.

Israel's very leaders disallowed (rejected) Jesus because they were disobedient to their own scriptures. He should have been made the head of the corner by them, but they were blinded by their sin. Peter is quoting Psalm 118:22.

**8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.**

Those who stumbled did so by choice. They chose to be disobedient to the truth that they received because they didn't like how it was not what they wanted or were taught to expect. Instead of checking it out for themselves they hardened their hearts to the truth.

God in his foreknowledge saw that they would do this, so Peter is just repeating to these people that they would be disobedient and choose to stumble at the rock of offence.

*Isaiah 8:14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.*

God did not create them to stumble, they stumbled at his word because they were disobedient to it. God had history written down before it happened. Some say that God caused it to happen, and that they didn't have a choice.

They did have a choice, but they stumbled when they came to the place to make the right decision, and they were disobedient. Disobedient meant they knew the right thing to do, but chose to do otherwise.

**9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:**

**Ye are a chosen generation:** That generation that was alive when the kingdom of heaven was being preached as "at hand." Paul never said the kingdom was at hand because it no longer was being offered after a certain point.

The kingdom will be at hand again during the tribulation period, and the gospel of the kingdom will be preached to all the world again at that time by Jewish believers, not Gentiles.

Peter was writing to the little flock of believing Jews from among the children of Israel who would inherit the kingdom. Matthew 24:13.

**A royal priesthood:** Peter begins to quote Exodus 19:6 when he says his readers are a royal priesthood, a holy nation. The body of Christ is not a nation, it is a body, made up of Jews and Gentiles, with Christ as its head.

*Exodus 19:5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine: 6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.*

The doctrine of the priesthood of the believer is not a doctrine for the church, it is for Israel.

Peter was a Jew, he was an apostle to the circumcision, he was not speaking to you, he was speaking to those Jewish kingdom saints who had scattered abroad at persecution that arose concerning Stephen in Acts 8:1 & 11:9. 1st Peter 1:2.

**10 Which in time past were not a people, but are now the people of God: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy.**

**In time past:** Before Abraham became Abraham, he was simply Abram who worshipped idols along with his father back in Ur of the Chaldees.

But God called him and made of him a great nation that will one day (in the kingdom) become a nation of priests (a holy nation) to be a blessing to the gentile nations.

The little flock of kingdom believers were the Israel of God, not Christians in the body of Christ. Galatians 6:16.

The little flock that was scattered obtained mercy by believing Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God. We obtained mercy by believing that he died for our sins, was buried, and that he rose from the dead three days later. 1st Corinthians 15:1-4.

**11 Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul; 12 Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation.**

**Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles:** Does that help you understand that Peter is not writing to the body of Christ? He is writing to the kingdom saints that had been dispersed at the persecution that arose concerning Stephen.

Liberals will tell you that this is the church being spoken of here, and that they were dispersed in 70 AD. That is not the case, the kingdom saints were dispersed by the Jews themselves with the aid of Rome many years earlier by Saul of Tarsus.

This may help you understand why the apostle Paul went after the Jew first when he would go into each city to preach the gospel, he was a great debtor to them after having persecuted them even unto death.

**The day of visitation:** This phrase is mentioned fifteen times in the Bible, and it always means the time when they stand before God and give an account. Isaiah 10:3.

**13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it be to the king, as supreme; 14 Or unto governors, as unto them that are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. 15 For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men: 16 As free, and not using your liberty for a cloke of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. 17 Honour all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honour the king.**

Peter is telling this scattered remnant of Jewish believers how to survive their time as they are dispersed among the Gentiles. They are to be examples to all that see them among the gentiles that these people are the servants of God.

**18 Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward. 19 For this is thankworthy, if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. 20 For what glory is it, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently?**

**but if, when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God.**

Some people think they are persecuted because they are believers, when in all truth, they are only being punished for being lazy, or disrespectful, which should not be named among Christ's followers.

**21 For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps: 22 Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth: 23 Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not; but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously: 24 Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed. 25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.**

**Who did no sin:** He was born without sin in his immaculate conception, and he never sinned.

*Hebrews 4:15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.*

While these believers cannot save anyone by their own deaths, they can point people to Christ by the example of their lives lived out in front of them.

**Ye were as sheep going astray:** Israel is referred to as sheep in the Bible. The body of Christ is not.

**But are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls:** This is a title of Jesus Christ. He is Israel's Shepherd, and always has been, and he is also the Head of the body of Christ today.

*Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, 21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.*

### Chapter Three

#### The hope that is within you

**1 Likewise, ye wives, be in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives; 2 While they behold your chaste conversation coupled with fear. 3 Whose adorning let it not be that outward adorning of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; 4 But let it be the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, even the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price. 5 For after this manner in the old time the holy women also, who trusted in God, adorned themselves, being in subjection unto**

their own husbands: 6 Even as Sara obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: whose daughters ye are, as long as ye do well, and are not afraid with any amazement.

*Genesis 18:12 Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying, After I am waxed old shall I have pleasure, my lord being old also?*

**Whose daughters ye all, as long as ye do well:** Just because they all descended from Abraham and Sarah, did not make them the Israel of God.

Their obedience to the covenant made them the Israel of God and spiritual daughters of Sarah as well as physical daughters of Sarah.

**7 Likewise, ye husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered. 8 Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous: 9 Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that ye are thereunto called, that ye should inherit a blessing.**

**The weaker vessel:** Women are weaker physically than men are.

**As being heirs together of the grace of life:** Hebrews 1:14, 6:17 and James 2:5.

**That ye should inherit a blessing:** The blessing that descendants of Abraham will inherit if they are believers is the kingdom itself, and ruling with Christ in his kingdom.

*Genesis 12:2 And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: 3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.*

Those Gentiles in the tribulation period who bless Israel will be blessed in the kingdom.

**10 For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile: 11 Let him eschew evil, and do good; let him seek peace, and ensue it. 12 For the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous, and his ears are open unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord is against them that do evil. 13 And who is he that will harm you, if ye be followers of that which is good? 14 But and if ye suffer for righteousness' sake, happy are ye: and be not afraid of their terror, neither be troubled; 15 But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear: 16 Having a good conscience; that, whereas they speak evil of you, as of evildoers, they may be ashamed that falsely accuse your good conversation in**

**Christ. 17 For it is better, if the will of God be so, that ye suffer for well doing, than for evil doing.**

**The hope that is in you:** Believing kingdom saints in the time of Jacob's trouble (Jeremiah 30:7) will have many opportunities to witness to their fellow countrymen during those terrible days that lie ahead.

The hope is Jesus Christ being the Christ, the Son of God.

**18 For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:**

**Being put to death in the flesh:** This speaks of Christ's death on the cross.

**But quickened by the Spirit:** This means to be made alive by the power of the Holy Spirit.

**19 By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison;**

Christ went to the spirits in prison and preached to them by the power of the Holy Spirit mentioned in verse 18, and people have argued, and will continue to argue, about, who it was that Christ preached to, and where it was that he preached to them from.

Was Christ in the torment side of Hell? First of all, could Abraham hear the rich man from the torment side of Hell all the way across the great gulf between them? Absolutely!

So, Christ could have preached from one side to other. Could Christ, who is all powerful, have crossed the gulf if he indeed preached to them in the torment side? Absolutely! But did he? We don't know.

Remember Christ was both God, and Man, and his flesh was in the grave at this time, not his divinity. We will get a little more information in the following chapter to give us some more context.

Was he preaching to the spirits (fallen angels who left their first estate, or was he preaching to the saved in Paradise?)

I am not sure why he would say those in Paradise were in Prison though, but they are said to be captives while they are there. Psalm 68:18.

Others will say he was in Hell preaching the gospel to the lost since Adam's day. I totally disagree with that liberal guess. It is called "Universal Reconciliation."

**20 Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.**

**The longsuffering of God:** Exodus 34:6, 1st Timothy 1:16, 2nd Peter 3:9 & 15.

**Wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water:** The water killed all of those whose generations who were not perfect as was Noah's was.

Notice in Genesis six that Noah found grace, because his generations were perfect. Which meant that his lineage was not infected by the mingling of the sons of God and the daughters of men.

**21 The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of**

**the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:**

**The like figure whereunto even baptism doth also now save us:** Peter is writing to the Jewish saints that were the strangers that were scattered abroad. Acts 8, & 11:19. 1<sup>st</sup> Peter 1:1.

If you will remember the kingdom saints were told in Acts 2:38 to repent and be baptized for the remission of sins. In Mark they were told "He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved."

We are not told that in the body of Christ today by our apostle of the Gentiles. We are saved by grace through faith alone without baptism or any other ordinance.

Notice he (Peter) linked himself, and the readers, together with Noah's family in regard to water having a part in their salvation. Not the body of Christ.

Water doesn't save us. Paul in fact said Christ sent him not to baptize but to preach the gospel. The twelve on the other hand were sent to baptize as a part of the "Great Commission".

**The answer of a good conscience toward God:** Water never could wash away the filth of the flesh (this speaks about a person's sins, not dirt).

As someone in the kingdom program was baptized in water, they would ceremonially become a part of that priesthood of believers that was promised unto the children of Israel in Exodus 19:5-6.

**22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.** *Psalm 110:1.*

*Matthew 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.*

#### Chapter Four

##### Suffering in the flesh

**1 Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin; 2 That he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God.**

**He that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin:** When you suffer for righteousness sake you cease to be unrighteous for the time being. Those that suffer in the flesh during the time of the tribulation period cease from sin for the time being as well.

This does not mean that they cannot sin, but they choose to suffer instead of enjoying the pleasures of sin for that season when the antichrist will be tempting Israel to sin.

These Jewish saints were to arm their minds with the same mind that Christ had. What a waste it would be for them having believed on Christ to live out the rest of their lives living for the flesh. What good would that do others?

**3 For the time past of our life may suffice us to have wrought the will of the Gentiles, when we walked in lasciviousness, lusts, excess of wine, revellings, banquetings, and abominable idolatries: 4 Wherein they think it strange that ye run not with them to the same excess of riot, speaking evil of you: 5 Who**

**shall give account to him that is ready to judge the quick and the dead.**

Notice that Peter separates himself and his readers (the Jewish kingdom saints) who were scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia etc., at the persecution of Stephen in Acts chapter 8.

He separates them from the Gentiles and even compares his readers and himself with the Gentiles which should help you to understand he is not writing to Gentiles in the church.

There is neither Jew nor Greek in the body of Christ today, but one new man. Ephesians 2:15.

**Him that is ready to judge:** This speaks of Jesus Christ.

**The quick and the dead:** The quick are those that are alive. The dead are those that need to be resurrected.

**6 For this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.**

**The gospel preached also to them that are dead:** The verse here plainly says that the gospel was preached also to them that are dead (those that are still lost) which implies that it was also preached to them that are alive.

They will be judged for rejecting the Son of God, and for all that the word contained, whether they knew it or not. They should have accepted it and taken it to heart.

**7 But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer. 8 And above all things have fervent charity among yourselves: for charity shall cover the multitude of sins. 9 Use hospitality one to another without grudging. 10 As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God.**

**The end of all things is at hand:** Peter is writing a Hebrew epistle to a bunch of Hebrews that have been scattered amongst the Gentiles and he tells them to live right among the lost Jews and Gentiles in their midst because there is not much time left.

**11 If any man speak, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.**

**Speak as the oracles of God:** Peter instructs these Jewish kingdom saints to speak and minister as he did, not selfishly but as a servant faithfully doing as his master did for an example.

**12 Beloved, think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened unto you: 13 But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when his glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.**

**The fiery trial which is to try you:** This is the time of Jacob's trouble that is to come upon Israel and the world, but it was put on hold for God to usher in the mystery program called the

dispensation of grace. That fiery trial will still come upon Israel because it is promised in God's word.

**14 If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified. 15 But let none of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters. 16 Yet if any man suffer as a Christian, let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify God on this behalf.**

Peter tells them to glory in the persecutions and to not be an evildoer and turn around and claim you are being persecuted. Peter is admonishing them to live a life above reproach.

**17 For the time is come that judgment must begin at the house of God: and if it first begin at us, what shall the end be of them that obey not the gospel of God? 18 And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear? 19 Wherefore let them that suffer according to the will of God commit the keeping of their souls to him in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.**

Peter says that the righteous are scarcely saved. That is not what Paul says about us in the body of Christ.

We have eternal security today, and we cannot be any less or more saved than we are right now. That could not be said to Peter's Jewish kingdom saints who were told to endure unto the end.

## Chapter Five

### Feed the flock of God

**1 The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:**

Peter in another place says he was an eyewitness of his (Christ's) majesty, in other words, he was saying he saw Christ in his Messianic kingdom glory on the mount of transfiguration with Moses and Elijah.

**A partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:** All who make it into the kingdom will partake of that glory.

**2 Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind; 3 Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being ensamples to the flock. 4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.**

**Feed the flock of God which is among you:** This verse is very important for the elders (shepherds) of these end time churches in the time of Jacob's trouble to be Christ like, and not to use the terrible time they are enduring as an excuse to lord over their flocks.

They need to be examples to their flocks how to live through tribulations. Remember what Jesus told Peter after his resurrection?

*John 21:15 So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my lambs. 16 He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. 17 He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep.*

**5 Likewise, ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. Yea, all of you be subject one to another, and be clothed with humility: for God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble. 6 Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time: 7 Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you.**

Peter is talking about the younger elders submitting themselves to the older elders that serve as shepherds over the churches they are over. There is a lot of wisdom that a young man can learn from an elder in the faith.

That advice is good for all people of faith in that age, but it transcends dispensational boundaries as well. Who could not benefit from submitting to someone wiser than ourselves?

Who cannot benefit from being submissive one to another? That is exactly what a team does, they work together not seeking their own glory but the teams.

**8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: 9 Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.**

**Resist stedfast in the faith:** These Jews that are scattered amongst the Gentiles will not be alone. The devil at this time especially will be seeking to devour as many as he can devour.

**Your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:** This verse implies that there are those he can and cannot devour.

He cannot devour those who resist him in the faith, because they are kept by their faith as mentioned in chapter one of this same epistle.

This is not doctrine for the dispensation of grace, but doctrine for Israel at the worse time of their history.

**10 But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you. 11 To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.**

**After that ye have suffered a while:** Peter instructs these tribulation saints that they will receive grace through their

sufferings, and their sufferings, like Christ's, will make them perfect, a finished product, to ready them for the kingdom.

**12 By Silvanus, a faithful brother unto you, as I suppose, I have written briefly, exhorting, and testifying that this is the true grace of God wherein ye stand.**

**By Silvanus:** This was Peter's penman of this short epistle that was written to help these particular saints at this particular time to understand the grace that they were to stand in at that time.

This is possibly the Silas mentioned in Paul's epistles, and in the book of Acts.

**This is the true grace of God wherein ye stand:** Grace has been present in each dispensation throughout history, and no one has ever been saved apart from grace, but each dispensation has their own variation of grace that is theirs to stand in.

**13 The church that is at Babylon, elected together with you, saluteth you; and so doth Marcus my son. 14, Greet ye one another with a kiss of charity. Peace be with you all that are in Christ Jesus. Amen.**

**The church that is at Babylon, elected together with you:** Peter lets these Jews that have been scattered at the persecution of Stephen know that the church at Babylon are a part of the ones elected by God in the last days to be a part of the "little flock" or "remnant."

They will have to endure unto the end of the tribulation period also known as the time of Jacob's trouble in order to enter into the kingdom.

**Marcus my son:** This is John Mark. The same Marcus that departed from the work with Paul and Barnabas in Acts 13.

He later returned and went with Barnabas to see how the churches were doing on a later missionary journey. Paul would later call him profitable for the ministry.

Here we find Marcus with Peter ministering to Jews in the dispersion all the way over in Babylon. This is where many Jews still remained from the Babylonian captivity. This epistle was probably written in between Acts 12 and 15.

**The End**

## Second Peter

### Introduction

This second epistle of Peter is written much later than his first epistle because we see mention made in this epistle of all of Paul's epistles which some of the circumcision believers were wresting to their own destruction.

It is also written just before his death because he mentions the longsuffering of God. Much of what is written in the short epistle of Jude can be found in the three short chapters of this epistle by Peter.

### Chapter One

#### Make your calling and election sure

**1 Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:**

**To them that have obtained like precious faith with us:** Peter compares himself with his readers as having obtained the same "like precious faith" as they, through the righteousness of God and their Saviour Jesus Christ.

Jude calls it the "**the common salvation, which was once delivered unto the saints.**" in Jude 3.

To say Peter was writing to them that have obtained "like precious faith with us" meant that Peter was writing to his fellow countrymen that heard the gospel of the kingdom.

The gospel of the grace of God that Paul preached was not restricted to the circumcision only, but was to all men, and it was a different gospel.

Peter in Galatians chapter two recognized the faith (gospel) that Paul was preaching among the uncircumcised that was different from his:

*Galatians 2:7 But contrariwise, when they saw that the gospel of the uncircumcision was committed unto me, as the gospel of the circumcision was unto Peter;*

God had Peter and the eleven apostles stay and preach the gospel of the circumcision to the Jews, while Paul went after the Gentiles with the gospel of the uncircumcision. Galatians 2.

**2 Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord,**

**Grace and peace be multiplied unto you:** This is not the same thing that the apostle of the Gentiles says at the beginning of each of his epistles.

He says, Grace be unto you, and peace, from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ. 1st Corinthians 1:3 & Jude 1:2.

**3 According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: 4 Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.**

**The knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue:** 2nd Peter 2:20-22. This has to do with their godliness.

**Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises:** Joel 2:28-29, Luke 24:29, Acts 1: 4 & 2:17-23.

**By these ye might be partakers of the divine nature:** This is a reference to the exceeding great and precious promises given to the nation of Israel, mainly that God's word will be written on their hearts in the kingdom, and they will know to choose good. Jeremiah 31:31.

The devil comes along with the help of his doctrines of devils and tells you that you can be like god, and you can tell God what to do.

Name and claim things that are not yours, speak things that are not into existence and on and on. Not so! That is not at all what Peter meant by the divine nature.

**5 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; 6 And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; 7 And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. 8 For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.**

When a believer begins to live out their faith by adding to their practice's virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, godliness, brotherly kindness, and charity they shall know Christ so much deeper.

When his disciples start to act like him, they learn better what he was like and what it is to be a Christian and it makes them more fruitful to the world and to themselves in the knowledge that is gained from practicing their faith.

**9 But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins.**

**He that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off:** They are only looking at the here and now during the tribulation period, and not thinking about their coming King and kingdom.

**Purged from his old sins:** Hebrews 9:14.

**10 Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall:**

**Give diligence to make your calling and election sure:** In Peter's first epistle he addresses it to the believing remnant scattered as strangers in heathen lands, and he calls them elect according to the foreknowledge of God. 1st Peter 1:2.

While Jeremiah 31:31-34 will be a permanent possession for the Jewish Nation in the kingdom, it will only come and go upon them in the tribulation period as they surrender to God's will and pray for his power in those last days.

**If ye do these things, ye shall never fall:** It can, and will, leave them if they get caught up in the affairs of this world. Hebrews 6. This is not possible today in the dispensation of grace.



**11 For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.**

**An entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom:** For those that endure unto the end an entrance into their kingdom will be given them. We are not trying to enter Israel's earthly kingdom in the millennium.

**12 Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things, though ye know *them*, and be established in the present truth.**

**13 Yea, I think it meet, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by putting *you* in remembrance; 14 Knowing that shortly I must put off *this* my tabernacle, even as our Lord Jesus Christ hath shewed me.**

**Be established in the present truth:** As long as he was alive as a minister to the circumcision (Israel) Peter continually put Israel in remembrance of the need to endure in the present truth.

The "present truth" for Israel was their prophecy program that had been spoken or written by the prophets since the foundation of the world and that concerns God's plan to redeem the earth using believers from the nation of Israel.

The present truth also implies that there is another truth for a later time, which for Israel will be fully understood only when they come into their earthly kingdom. 1st Peter 5:12.

**I must put off this my tabernacle:** Peter was going to be with his ancestors in Paradise to await Israel's kingdom.

**15 Moreover I will endeavour that ye may be able after my decease to have these things always in remembrance. 16 For we have not followed cunningly devised fables, when we made known unto you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of his majesty.**

The very act of having this epistle written and copied and recopied over and over again and ensuring it spreading out to all the circumcision believers allowed saints in Peter's day and those in the future tribulation period to have God's directions to them ever before them.

**Eyewitnesses of his majesty:** Peter tells his readers that he is not making these things up, nor is there a group of Galileans that cunningly devised some fables to get followers, but they actually were eyewitnesses of his majesty.

*Matthew 16:28 Verily I say unto you, There be some standing here, which shall not taste of death, till they see the Son of man coming in his kingdom. 17:1 And after six days Jesus taketh Peter, James, and John his brother, and bringeth them up into an high mountain apart, 2 And was transfigured before them: and his face did shine as the sun, and his raiment was white as the light. 3 And, behold, there appeared unto them Moses and Elias talking with him.*

This meant that on the mountain they saw Jesus transformed in his kingdom glory before them when he talked with Moses and Elijah about the kingdom.

The apostles were simply relaying what God wanted them to know to prepare them to enter into their kingdom.

**17 For he received from God the Father honour and glory, when there came such a voice to him from the excellent glory, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. 18 And this voice which came from heaven we heard, when we were with him in the holy mount. *Matthew 17:5.***

**19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts:**

**A more sure word of prophecy:** More sure than even the audible voice of God that they all heard on the day at Christ's transfiguration.

The word of God that they were sharing with them was not of human origin, but it was given to them by the Holy Ghost, and it was to be written and preserved for all generations.

**20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. 21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake *as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.***

**No prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation:** No one could say that this verse can mean this to me, and it can mean another thing to someone else.

Prophecy was given to Israel because they are the nation that will inherit the earth in their kingdom. We are not Israel; we are the body of Christ.

**Holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost:** Scripture is God speaking to mankind through the power of the Holy Ghost to the writers such as Peter to give us a bible without error.

The writers of scripture did not have to rely on their feeble memories to give us God's word, the Holy Ghost brought to memory everything that was needed to be written done.

*John 14:25 These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you. 26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.*

We have an inerrant bible, it is God-breathed (inspired).

## Chapter Two

### False Teachers

**1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.**

**There were false prophets also among the people:** Deuteronomy 13:1-3 & Jude 3.

**There shall be false teachers among you:** They do not believe they are false teachers, but they sincerely believe that they are teaching people the truth, but in reality, they are damnable heresies.

**Who privily shall bring in damnable heresies:** The devil takes a teaching that has its basis in the Bible and perverts it just enough to damn the listeners soul. This occurs when people wrongly divide the word of truth. 2<sup>nd</sup> Timothy 2:15.

**Even denying the Lord that bought them:** *Jude 4.*

**Whose end is swift destruction:** This does not mean annihilation. Their physical bodies are destroyed. but they will still spend an eternity in the lake of fire one day and it will be their own fault for believing and teaching these things.

**2 And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of. 3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.**

**Their pernicious ways:** Many will slowly be deceived by them, as they will be a part of the devil's lie program, they will sound like they are legitimate, and the multitudes will unfortunately follow them.

They will be the state, or world religion, and all the world will wonder after their leader, but he will be the antichrist, not the Christ, and their judgment will be swift as they are cast in the lake of fire.

**4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;** *Jude 6.*

**The angels that sinned:** Those sons of god, that took to themselves daughters of men and had offspring of them that became giants. Genesis 6:1-8.

**Chains of darkness:** *Revelation 20:1.*

**Reserved unto judgment:** They are held there until they are judged in the future and cast into the lake of fire.

**5 And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly;** *Genesis 6:12-7:24.*

**The eighth person:** Noah was the eighth person on the Ark. 1<sup>st</sup> Peter 3:20.

**6 And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrhah into ashes condemned *them* with an overthrow, making *the man* ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; 7 And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked: 8 (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed *his* righteous soul from day to day with *their* unlawful deeds;) 9 The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished:** *Jude 7.*

**Just Lot:** Lot's soul was righteous. He sinned because it was vexed by the activities around him that he gave into.

**The day of judgment:** *Acts 24:14-15.*

**10 But chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous *are they*, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities.** *Jude 8.*

**11 Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.** *Jude 9.*

**12 But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption;** *Jude 10.*

**Made to be taken and destroyed:** They are not made to go to hell. They chose to go to hell by rebelling against the truth of God's word.

God knew that they would make this choice, he did not force them to choose it, they made it willingly so they may enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season.

**13 And shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, *as they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots *they are* and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceivings while they feast with you;***

**Spots they are and blemishes:** *Jude 12 & 23.*

**14 Having eyes full of adultery, and that cannot cease from sin; beguiling unstable souls: an heart they have exercised with covetous practices; cursed children: 15 Which have forsaken the right way, and are gone astray, following the way of Balaam *the son of Bosor*, who loved the wages of unrighteousness; 16 But was rebuked for his iniquity: the dumb ass speaking with man's voice forbad the madness of the prophet.** *Jude 11 & Numbers 22:22-33.*

**17 These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever.** *Jude 12-13.*

**18 For when they speak great swelling *words* of vanity, they allure through the lusts of the flesh, *through much* wantonness, those that were clean escaped from them who live in error.** *Jude 16 & 1<sup>st</sup> John 2:16.*

**19 While they promise them liberty, they themselves are the servants of corruption: for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage.**

The knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ

**20 For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. 21 For it had been better for them not to have known the way of**

**righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.**

**The knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ:** No one who believes in eternal security today should ever wonder that this book does not teach eternal security to its readers. 2nd Peter 1:2.

Peter is an apostle to the nation of Israel and preaches to the children of Israel in the first century and to those going through the tribulation period as well.

These people will have had the holy commandment delivered unto them by the 144,000, and by the two witnesses, and if they willfully turned from it to preach something else, they will be lost.

Paul is the one preaching and teaching eternal security for the body of Christ in his epistles, not Peter or the any of the 12. They had different messages to different groups.

*Hebrews 6:4 For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, 5 And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, 6 If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.*

**22 But it is happened unto them according to the true proverb, The dog is turned to his own vomit again; and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire. Proverbs 26:11.**

If a person receives light and rejects a portion of it that brings darkness to them. They cannot understand what it is that they have received and so the only thing they can do is twist it and pervert it.

It will be imperative in those days that people keep short accounts with God, and that they endure the things that come their way. Matthew 24:13.

### Chapter Three

#### Be mindful of the words

**1 This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in both which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance:**

**This second epistle:** Peter was writing to the same people he had addressed his first epistle to, Jews that had been scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, who had obtained "like" precious faith with the apostles.

This meant that they were saved under the same kingdom (prophecy) message as the apostles.

**2 That ye may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour:**

**Be mindful of the words:** Peter tells Israel to be mindful of the words concerning their prophecy program. That has to do with everything that was either written, or spoken by the prophets "since the world began." Luke 1:70 & Acts 3:21.

The prophets and the twelve apostles spoke the same things because they were under the same program.

One (the prophets) spoke of things that would occur during the ministry of the apostles, while the apostles along with Christ fulfilled those prophecies.

Peter wanted them to remember what had been said by them. Paul is not mentioned here because he received his revelations, not from the prophets, nor were his words a fulfillment of their prophecies.

Paul preached about an unpropheied period of time which we call the mystery program. Peter was telling them that even though many years had gone by since his first epistle they were supposed to remember what he had said and that they should still be mindful of it.

**3 Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lust:**

**In the last days:** The term "last days" refers to a time extending from the ascension of Jesus Christ until the time of His return in glory. It does not deal with just the seven-year tribulation period.

All throughout the old testament, prophets have spoken about the "last days". Peter reminds them that this is still an event that is yet to happen and that their pure minds should be stirred up by their remembering the words of the prophets:

*Genesis 49:1 And Jacob called unto his sons, and said, Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you that which shall befall you in the last days.*

This was a promise of God that even preceded Noah's day. But just as there were scoffers in his day, so shall there be in the last days. As they mocked Noah, they will mock those who believe in the time of Jacob's trouble.

**4 And saying,**

**Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of creation.**

**Where is the promise of his coming:** All things did not remain the same from the beginning of the creation, God destroyed the world with a flood just before Abraham's day.

**Since the father's fell asleep:** Since their ancestors have died.

**All things continue as they were from the beginning of creation:** They forget about the flood in Noah's day.

**5 For this they are willingly ignorant of, that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water: 6 Whereby the world that then was, being overflowed with water, perished:**

**This they are willingly ignorant of:** Peter says that if they scoff at the Lord's return then they don't believe the Bible, because there was a flood that was predicted along with the return of the Lord.

**The earth standing out of the water, and in the water:** Genesis 1:1-10.

**The world that then was, being overflowed with water, perished:** The flood came true and so will the return of Christ.

Peter says these people are willingly ignorant of God's word, they chose to believe there was no flood, because that would lend credit to the story of the flood in Noah's day.

**7 But the heavens and the earth which are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire**

**against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men.**

**The heavens and earth which are now, by the same word are kept in store:** The heavens and earth in Peter's day are still with us today, but they are going to be burnt up after the kingdom is over.

It is the word of God, that keeps them in store. Because God said it, then it is going to happen. Revelation 21:22.

**Reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition:** This is mentioned below in verses 10-12.

**8 But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day.**

*Psalm 90:4 For a thousand years in thy sight are but as yesterday when it is past, and as a watch in the night.*

Peter then makes a statement that many understand to mean that the Lord just may return sometime after the year 2,000. In the year 2,000 the world became approximately 6,000 years old, or 6 days old with the Lord.

Based on the fact that God made the heaven and earth in six days and rested the seventh, many believe that the millennial kingdom will occur sometime after the year 2,000.

It is 2023 now and the Lord has not set up his kingdom nor has the time of Jacob's trouble began which precedes the kingdom by seven years.

Some think the time of these two future events occur 2,000 years after Christ's resurrection. The beginning of the millennial kingdom would be the first seconds of the seventh prophetic day.

*Exodus 20:11 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day, and hallowed it.*

Most Christians believe that the return of Christ is imminent (It could come at any moment), and many believe, as do I, that those living today will be the generation that be alive on the earth at rapture.

An interesting event happened to a man by the name of Enoch in Scripture which has also given many Christians the feeling that the time after the year 2,000 is significant concerning the Lord's return.

I'll let you be the judge by presenting the Scriptural story of what happened to Enoch and then comparing it to the Sabbath, the thousand years as a day and vice versa, and the teachings about the rapture found in the new testament:

*Jude 14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, 15 To execute judgement upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him. 16 These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaketh great swelling words, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage.*

*Genesis 5:24 And Enoch walked with God: and he was not; for God took him.*

*Hebrews 11:5 By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had*

*translated (raptured or caught away) him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God.*

Enoch, a Gentile, could be a "type or picture" of the church being raptured out from the earth to be with God prior to God pouring out His wrath on the earth.

Enoch's great grandson was Noah, who God used to save the human race after the flood.

Many people do not realize that Noah's father Lamech died just four years before the flood and Enoch's son whom everyone has heard of, Methuselah, lived to be 969 (the oldest person who ever lived) years old.

He is also the oldest person to have ever drowned in a flood. Methuselah was still alive right up until the flood.

He no doubt along with Lamech must not have believed Noah's message, because they sure didn't help Noah build that ark.

Secular historians like to claim that Jesus was born around 5 B.C. in order to disassociate the beginning of our calendar with having anything to do with Christianity.

Peter goes on to assure us, as well as Christians from all generations, that God keeps His promises and that He wants even those who are willingly ignorant to turn unto Him for their salvation before it is too late:

**9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.**

**His promise:** This promise concerns the fire that is to come upon the heavens and the earth after the thousand-year kingdom ends.

Peter then goes on to tell us about the "day of the Lord," when many cataclysmic events all happen in one day, and God creates a new heaven and a new earth:

**10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.**

**The day of the Lord:** This is not the rapture of the church when the Lord returns to catch away His saints before the great and terrible tribulation period that will come upon the earth. 1st Thessalonians 5:2.

The day of the Lord doesn't begin after the tribulation period, but immediately after the battle of Gog and Magog which takes place at the end of the millennial kingdom:

*Revelation 20:7 And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, 8 And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea.*

*Revelation 21:1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.*

If you believe the Bible is true, these things should cause you to get on fire for God, because Hell is a real place where lost people go:

**11 Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all conversation and godliness, 12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?**

**The coming of the day of God:** Tribulation saints should work to bring as many souls into God's kingdom as they can because it will be an everlasting kingdom: Jude 21.

**13 Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.**

God has promised in the Revelation of Jesus Christ which was written by John a fellow apostle and a close friend of Peter who tells us about new heavens and a new earth wherein the time immediately following the kingdom there would dwell complete righteousness. Revelation 21:1.

**14 Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless.**

**Be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless:** Numbers 19:2, Hebrews 9:14, 1<sup>st</sup> Peter 1:19 & Luke 1:6.

**15 And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you; 16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.**

Notice that verse 15 begins with the word and," which links Peter's mentioning of God's longsuffering for the little flock, with what Paul wrote to the body of Christ.

**The longsuffering of our Lord:** 1st Peter 3:20 where Peter mentions the longsuffering of God in the days of Noah. Genesis 6, Romans 2: 4 & 9:22.

Paul wrote to the people that Peter is addressing, and many have said that this proves that Paul wrote the book of Hebrews.

It has nothing to do with the book of Hebrews. The verse tells you what it was that Paul wrote to them about "the longsuffering of the Lord."

Where does Paul mention this? Paul does mention longsuffering in first Timothy 2:15 and 16 right before he goes to die at the hands of Nero:

*1st Timothy 1:15 This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save*

*sinner; of whom I am chief. 16 Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Jesus Christ might shew forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.*

**The wisdom given unto him:** Paul tells us 10 times about the grace given unto him, which is a reference to the teachings on the mysteries of the dispensation of grace which is called the manifold wisdom of God.

*1st Corinthians 2:6 Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought: 7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory: 8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. 9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. 10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. 11 For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God. 12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. 13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.*

**Hath written unto you:** What did Paul write unto Peter's audience?

**In which are some things hard to be understood:** One of those things was that in Paul first Jesus Christ might shew forth all longsuffering as a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.

Paul writes other epistles that never become a part of the cannon of scripture, such as the epistle from Laodicea mentioned in Colossians 4:16.

**The other scriptures:** Paul's writings are called scriptures by Peter himself, and he differentiates them from the rest of the scriptures because of the fact that they alone are written for the body, of Christ, not Israel.

**17 Ye therefore, beloved, seeing ye know these things before, beware lest ye also, being led away with the error of the wicked, fall from your own steadfastness. 18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and forever. Amen.**

The End

## First John

### Introduction

The authors of the gospel of John, I, II, III John, and Revelation are all one and the same person. John, the brother of James, one of the twelve apostles to the nation of Israel (a.k.a. the Circumcision).

In order to understand 1st, 2nd, and 3rd John better, we must look to the beginning of John's gospel to get some definitions that John has already given to his audience.

*John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 2 The same was in the beginning with God. 3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made. 4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men. 5 And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not. 6 There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. 7 The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe. 8 He was not that Light, but was sent to bear witness of that Light. 9 That was the true Light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world. 10 He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. 11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not. 12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: 13 Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God. 14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.*

These three epistles are an essential part of what is known as the Hebrew epistles. Many erroneously call them the General epistles, which they are anything but general.

They are specifically for the nation of Israel in the latter times which is why they appear after the Pauline epistles which were written to the body of Christ for the dispensation of grace.

### Chapter One

#### The Light of the World

**1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;**

**That which was from the beginning:** This epistle starts out very similar to the gospel of John in taking us back to the beginning of time when the Word (Jesus) spoke everything into existence (John 1:3).

*John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.*

John uses the pronouns we and our four times in verse one and they are in reference to the nation of Israel and their dealings with the Messiah.

It was Israel that heard the gospel of the kingdom from his very lips, and that saw him with their very own eyes. Matthew 4:17.

It was Israel that looked upon Jesus and handled him with their hands. The Gentiles did not hear him because he came to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Matthew 10:5-9.

When a Gentile came to him on one occasion, he did not answer her at first and then he told her that he had to feed the children first (Israel) before her Gentile daughter could be healed.

He later healed her daughter after she acknowledged that salvation was of the Jews just like he told the women at the well. Sadly, however John recorded that he came unto his own (Israel) and his own received him not. John 1:11.

**The Word of life:** Notice that the word "Word" is capitalized here referring to the Christ that Israel had with them for 33 and a half years.

He was the voice heard walking in the midst of the Garden in Genesis three. He is the Word of God incarnate.

*John 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.*

**2. (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifest unto us;)**

**The life was manifested:** John twice mentions the word "manifest" in this second verse because he wants everyone to know that the life that was with the Father has manifested himself in the person of Jesus Christ to Israel.

He is primarily referring to Christ's three-and-a-half-year ministry where Israel had seen him personally.

**And shew unto you that eternal life:** Christ is eternal life because he is the eternal one who gave life to all things.

*John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.*

**3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.**

Again, Israel saw and heard Christ in the flesh, and the twelve apostles to the nation of Israel had the responsibility to declare him unto the nation of Israel.

**That ye also may have fellowship with us:** John is reaching out to the Jews that are dispersed, as well as to those who will be going through the tribulation period that they might have fellowship with them forever in the kingdom.

Ultimately with the Father, and his Son because John and the other apostles have gone through hard times themselves.

**4 And these things write we unto you that your joy may be full.**

John says these things write "we" unto you, he is speaking of the books of Hebrews through Revelation, as they were encouraging those going through hard times back then, and to those who will go through the time of Jacob's trouble.

**That your joy may be full:** The purpose for the epistle is equip Israel to go through the time of Jacob's trouble with a joy that can be full even in the midst of the worst time they will ever see. John 15:11, 16:2 4 & 2<sup>nd</sup> John 1:12.

**5 This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare unto you, that God is light, and in him is no darkness at all.**

**God is light:** Christ told his apostle that God was light, this is not light as we think of light like a candle puts off, but rather John is telling us that God is the illumination of truth and holiness. John 1:4-9 above.

**In him is no darkness at all:** Darkness is akin to sin. He was born of a virgin so as not to be born with the stain of original sin, and then he lived a perfect life, always doing those things that pleased the Father.

Then he died as an innocent lamb sacrificed for the sins of the world. Sinners did not comprehend the light (illumination) that Jesus brought to them. John 1:4-5.

Israel is to be a light to the Gentiles in the kingdom by telling the Gentile world about the Light that had illuminated them for three and a half years. This will occur in the kingdom just after the seven years of Jacob's trouble. Isaiah 42:6-7 & 60:1-3.

### **6 If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth:**

**Walk in darkness:** This is synonymous with walking in sin.

A believer during the tribulation period will need to walk in the light and endure unto the end of that time period without taking the mark of the beast in order to enter into the kingdom.

Notice that John does not say that they don't know the truth, but that after knowing it they willfully choose not to do the truth and to walk in darkness.

There will be those during that time that claim to have fellowship with Christ, but it will be a lie because fellowship in that day will require walking with Christ doing the truth.

When they walk away from doing the truth, they walk away from the fellowship they had while walking in the light with Christ.

This is not how fellowship is determined in the dispensation of grace that Paul talks about that is for today, because our salvation is sealed until the day of redemption.

They will be under the kingdom program again with the law as a requirement for having fellowship in the light.

### **7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.**

**If we walk in the light:** This is synonymous with walking in the truth that Jesus gave to Israel.

A believer in any age can have a closer fellowship with God and his Son the farther they are from darkness. The darkness that will befall people in the last times will be unlike anything the world has ever known.

Today, we as believers already possess eternal life and we can never lose it, but after the rapture occurs that dispensation of grace is over, things revert back to the way they were when Christ was here on the earth.

The law will be in effect during the tribulation period for those kingdom saints.

**The blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin:** When Christ came, he came under the law, to redeem them that were under the law. Galatians 4:4.

During the tribulation period a believer will need to confess his sins so that the blood of Jesus Christ can cleanse that believer of their sins similar to the way it was practiced under the old testament system.

Notice it says, "**if we walk in the light...**, the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin," and so the opposite is also true that if a believer in that age does not walk in the light, the blood of Jesus Christ does not cleanse them from all sin.

I know this is hard to accept if you have been taught as I have to spiritualize this whole epistle, but just try to take every word literally, and apply it to whom it was meant for, in the time that it was meant for and it makes perfect sense.

### **8 If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.**

How many foolish people will perish during the last times without ever admitting they were sinners in need of a Saviour? How many believers during that time will say concerning their sin, "It wasn't that big of a deal"?

People will be claiming in that day that they are still walking in the light, when they know in their heart that they are not, and they will have un-confessed sin in their life which prevent them from being clean in God's eyes because of their unrighteousness.

### **9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.**

**If we confess our sins:** The we and our in this verse are speaking about Israel under their program during the tribulation period. Today in the dispensation of grace we already have eternal life dwelling inside us.

During this short time period during the tribulation period the gospel of the kingdom will again be preached, and the Jew will need to endure unto the end of the tribulation period faithfully to enter into their kingdom:

*Matthew 24:13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. 14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.*

As we saw in the previous verse a person in that day needs to keep short accounts with God, because if they confess their sins, he will forgive them of their sins, and if they refuse to admit their sin it will not be forgiven.

I thank God I am forgiven in this dispensation from all of my sins, past, present, and future. That is not the case in the tribulation, and it was not the case before the dispensation of grace began.

### **10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.**

No one who knows even a little of scripture would dare to say they have not sinned, but this is not referring to us today, it is to those who will need as to keep short accounts with God regarding sin.

If a tribulation saint denies to God that he has sinned and does not seek forgiveness, he will not receive forgiveness, and he will have to answer for it for eternity.

## Chapter Two

### Walking in the Light

**1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:**

**My little children:** John uses these words once in the gospel of John, and nine times here in this epistle. The words “little children” are important to understand who John is speaking to.

Jesus used that term in the gospel of John when he was speaking to his eleven disciples (it was no coincidence that Jesus waited until he left to use this term).

*John 13:33 Little children, yet a little while I am with you. Ye shall seek me: and as I said unto the Jews, Whither I go, ye cannot come; so now I say to you. 34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another. 35 By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another.*

**We have an advocate with the Father:** John tells these little children (tribulation saints), that they are not to sin, but if they do that, they have an advocate with the Father:

**Jesus Christ the righteous:** Jesus Christ is called the righteous because he was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. Hebrews 4:15.

Israel, in that day, will need to go to the advocate and to confess their sins during this time of great trouble, who will then intercede in their behalf to the Father.

We in the body of Christ today do not have an advocate with the Father, because God the Father already sees us as righteous, because of His Son’s finished work on the cross on our behalf.

He has already won our case and we are in Jesus Christ. Israel will have their sins forgiven on the day of atonement in the future.

In Acts 3:19-21 it says that Israel’s sins are blotted out when the times of refreshing comes from the Lord i.e., the kingdom.

We receive eternal life the moment we believe while they must go to an advocate for their sins in the tribulation period, just like their kingdom brothers in the first century.

You do not need to hire a defense attorney if you are already have had your sins paid for as an individual. Israel as a nation has their sins forgiven in the future on the day of atonement prior to their entering into their kingdom.

**2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.**

**He is the propitiation for our sins:** John tells his “Jewish” readers that Christ is the propitiation for more than just his Jewish hearers going through the tribulation period, but also for any believing Gentile around the whole world during any age as well.

Propitiation literally means “all that we need”. What he did is all that we need to receive the forgiveness of sins, because God is satisfied with his sacrifice on our behalf.

**3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.**

**We know him, if we keep his commandments:** This book is not written to us, we are not the Jews going through the time of Jacob’s trouble.

If you read it literally as for the saints during the tribulation period, or for the Jewish saints that were still under the kingdom program in the first century, then you will have no problem with what John tells these saints.

Believers back then had to keep Christ’s commandments, and they will again in the tribulation period. Notice what Jesus told a

rich young ruler back in John’s days and ask yourself, “Am I under that program today?”

*Matthew 19:16 And, behold, one came and said unto him, Good Master, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life? 17 And he said unto him, Why callest thou me good? there is none good but one, that is, God: But, if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments.*

The answer for us today is no, of course we do not keep the commandments in order to be saved.

We are not under the law and never were or will be, but Israel was and will be again in the tribulation period. Not only are they to keep the law, but they are to obey everything that Christ commanded his apostles to keep:

*Matthew 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.*

**4 He that saith,**

**I know him,**

**and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. 5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him.**

**In him verily is the love of God perfected:** The word perfected means to be made complete.

We know that John is referring to the law here when he talks about keeping Christ’s commandments but go and look for yourself at all the commands of Christ and see how many of those you are keeping today.

You will see that Christ told his Jewish audience to repent (turn back) and keep the covenant they made with God at Sinai. He did not make the old covenant with us; it was with Israel! They are the focus in the tribulation period not us.

**6 He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked.**

All who are saved in the dispensation of grace are in Christ today, and we can never be taken out of Christ, because of our sin, or it would not be called grace.

These saints do not have eternal life as a present possession, and they must abide in Christ, just as Christ said in the gospel of John to those kingdom saints back during the time of Jesus and the twelve:

*John 15:4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. 5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.*

**7 Brethren, I write no new commandment unto you, but an old commandment which ye had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word which ye have heard from the beginning. 8 Again, a new commandment I write unto you, which thing is true in him and in you: because the darkness is past, and the true light now shineth.**



**The word which ye have heard from the beginning:** John is referring to what he said back in the gospel of John in chapter one about Christ being the Light of the world:

*John 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made. 4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men. 5 And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not. 6 There was a man sent from God, whose name was John 7 The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe.*

**9 He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now. 10 He that loveth his brother abideth in the light, and there is none occasion of stumbling in him. 11 But he that hateth his brother is in darkness, and walketh in darkness, and knoweth not whither he goeth, because that darkness hath blinded his eyes.**

A strong emphasis is placed on abiding in the light, or in the truth, which are synonymous. We today are placed into the light when we believe the truth and we are kept by God.

After the body of Christ is raptured, Israel will need to abide in the light that they have and not draw back. We today in the dispensation of grace cannot draw back.

**12 I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. 13 I write unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I write unto you, young men, because ye have overcome the wicked one. I write unto you, little children, because ye have known the Father. 14 I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one.**

John writes to three classes of believers in the tribulation period which is evident by their overcoming the wicked one.

**I write unto you, little children:** This is both a reference to the young as well as to the young in faith and he says their sins are forgiven them for his (Christ's) name's sake and because ye have known the father.

**I write unto you, Fathers:** Then he mentions the fathers and says the same thing twice about them to place a special emphasis on the fact that they have known him (Christ, the eternal One) that is from the beginning.

**I write unto, young men:** This is to encourage them because as he mentions twice that they have overcome the wicked one (the antichrist).

It is the time when young men are spiritually motivated the most they will ever be to follow God even to their deaths.

Satan knows this often better than we do, and he seeks to turn young men's hearts away from God at this time, but not these men. They abide in the truth.

**15 Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. 16 For all that is in the world,**

**the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. 17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.**

**Love not the world:** The world means the things of this world. What God wants for all men of all ages or dispensations to realize is that the things of this world are temporal (temporary), and the things of God are eternal.

The child of God needs to see that he must set his affection on the things of God, or he will be lured away by the things of this world, and they have a consuming affect upon us, and we can become of no value spiritually speaking to ourselves or those around us.

This is especially important to those saints enduring the tribulation period. Doing the will of God at that terribly tough time will guarantee they abide forever in God's kingdom.

**18 Little children, it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time.**

**It is the last time:** This term only occurs four times, and all four of them have a tribulation context associated with them. It also occurs later in a chapter of this same epistle along with once in First Peter:

*1st Peter 1:5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. 13 Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;*

We are not waiting today for grace to be brought to us today. It has already come, but tribulation saints will be in a whole different context than us.

**Antichrist shall come:** The evil one mentioned throughout the book of the revelation.

**Even now there are many antichrists:** Anyone who leads people away from the light and into darkness is an antichrist.

**Whereby we know that it is the last time:** John links his day with the day that is still yet in the future, and he calls them both the last time.

These two times have been interrupted today by the dispensation of grace. The last time will begin again after the dispensation of grace ends at the rapture.

**19 They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us. 20 But ye have an unction from the Holy One, and ye know all things.**

**They went out from us:** Some associated with the little flock (remnant church) in the tribulation period will give in to the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life and they will depart from those that abide in the truth.

John calls them something that we may think is very harsh, but it is still very true. He calls them antichrists and says that even now there are many antichrists.

He of course is not talking about "the antichrist" but those who choose the pleasures the mark of the beast can provide them temporarily.

They are choosing not to be on God's side and receive God's provision but rather choosing the world and its leader as their god/provider which makes them on the opposite team of Christ i.e., on the antichrist's team.

**But ye have an unction from the Holy one, and ye know all things:** This is speaking about those that have been baptized with the Holy Spirit.

Today, we are baptized by the Holy Spirit, not with the Holy Spirit, because we are not Israel under the law. You do not have an unction from the Holy one today, and you do not know all things.

**21 I have not written unto you because ye know not the truth, but because ye know it, and that no lie is of the truth. 22. Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son. 23 Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: (but) he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.**

**Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ:** John is focusing on the lie of Satan, and he reminds them that no lie is of the truth no matter how well it is packaged by the world.

The main lie of the devil at this time in history will be that Jesus is not the Christ, but an imposter and that the antichrist is really the true Messiah of Israel.

**He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son:** He will be the one saying in the early days, "Look, I have given you your temple back and your sacrifices, I am your Messiah, worship me." and multitudes will believe him.

This will be the litmus test in the tribulation period to judge whether someone is abiding in the light or hiding in darkness with the rest of the world.

Sadly, many Jews will believe the antichrist by denying the Son. If they deny the Son, then they also deny the Father. You cannot have one without the other. There will be many antichrists in that day sadly.

**24 Let that therefore abide in you, which ye have heard from the beginning. If that which ye have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, ye also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father. 25 And this is the promise that he hath promised us, even eternal life. 26 These things have I written unto you concerning them that seduce you.**

**Let that therefore abide in you:** Antichrists will be trying to seduce these saints to quit abiding in the truth with their arguments that appeal too many, but what awaits them that do not is everlasting darkness and punishment.

**If that which ye have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, ye also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father:** There is no way you can spiritualize or explain away the clear teachings of this small book.

Believers in the time of the tribulation period people can turn away, fall away, quit abiding, or make shipwreck their faith. We, today, cannot.

By them not allowing those things they have learned from the beginning through the ministry of the 144,000, and the two witnesses to remain, they can lose their salvation.

We cannot! The promise that is given to these first century kingdom believers and tribulation saints is eternal life in their kingdom, not in heaven, but on the earth.

**27 But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.**

**The anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you:** This is something that happened with the little flock (Luke 12:322) in the early part of the book of Acts and it will happen again for these tribulation saints.

God will give them the anointing (the baptism with the Holy Ghost) to supernaturally assist them during this time in knowing and keeping God's commandments.

Similar to what the kingdom saints will have when God writes his laws on Israel's hearts in the kingdom. They only have the anointing when they are abiding in Christ during the tribulation. It is a permanent possession in the kingdom.

Remember how the little flock had to continually pray to be filled again and again with the Holy Spirit for power to be bold witnesses?

This will happen again after the body of Christ is raptured out of here. Christ was anointed at his baptism with the Holy Spirit:

**Acts 4:27 For of a truth against thy holy child Jesus, whom thou hast anointed, both Herod, and Pontius Pilate, with the Gentiles, and the people of Israel, were gathered together,**

**Acts 10:38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.**

**Ye need not that any man teach you:** Can you say that you have that anointing and don't need anyone else to teach you anything, because you can just ask the Holy Spirit to teach you and he does? No, you don't.

**28 And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming.**

**Little children:** Again, we find the identifier "little children" used as Jesus used it to talk to his strictly Jewish audience who were commandment keeping, followers of the Lord Jesus Christ.

These little children here, are first century Jewish believers, and members of that little flock, but John is also talking to a future group of Jewish believers in the tribulation period.

**Abide in him:** The are told to abide in him so that they will not be ashamed when they (his Jewish audience at the end of the tribulation period) see him return to this earth at the end of the tribulation period to set up his kingdom.

The believer today is not waiting for Christ to appear at his revelation after the tribulation period, when every eye shall see

him, but we are waiting for his secret return in the clouds to take us up in the rapture.

**29 If ye know that he is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him.**

**Born of him:** This is the same thing that Jesus taught Nicodemus in John chapter three. "Ye must be born again."

Over and over again in this epistle the emphasis is on the individual doing, abiding, and keeping the commandments of God.

If John's audience does righteousness, then they are born of him. Paul never said anything like that to the body of Christ. John was not talking to us in the body of Christ, he was talking to Israel under the law.

Today we are kept by the power of God, and we are his unconditionally. The tribulation saints will have a conditional relationship during that time.

### Chapter Three

#### The sons of God

**1 Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.**

**The sons of God:** These tribulation saints are so loved by God that God wants to call them his sons. The world will hate the sons of God in those days just as it hated Christ and his followers two thousand years ago.

John uses the phrase "sons of God" also in his gospel letter and in it he says something that will be just as true in the tribulation period as it was back in John's day.

**John 1:12 says, But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:**

Those that believe on the name of Jesus as the Christ, the Son of the living God will be given power by God to become sons of God at his return, but during the tribulation they will have supernatural help keeping the commandments of God.

God's Spirit is poured out upon all flesh as it did partially on Pentecost in a total fulfillment during those dark days.

They will receive power during the tribulation period to resist the mark of the antichrist, but they will have to endure unto the end of that time by using what they have been given and not give in to the world.

They will not be sinless in those days, but they will be baptized with the Holy Spirit as they were on Pentecost and will have power to do many things in those days that we are not able to do today such as is recorded in Mark 16:15.

When we are saved today in the church age, we are immediately children of God by faith, and we are sealed until the day of redemption.

**2. Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.**

**Now are we the sons of God:** When a person believed Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God in those days, they become sons of God themselves by inheritance.

**When he shall appear, we shall be like him:** Those that endure, who are the overcomers during that terrible time of Jacob's trouble will inherit eternal life in their kingdom.

Their bodies will change, because their bodies are born in sin, and must be changed to be like Christ's body to live eternally in their kingdom. Jesus' body was not the same once he rose from the dead.

**3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure. 4 Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law. 5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.**

**Every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself:** The hope that they will have an eternal body and live forever.

Because they have that hope they are helped by the power of the Holy Spirit not to commit sin. They are to purify themselves to keep themselves from the temptation to go back to the world.

**And in him is no sin:** Christ himself said he was sinless (Which of you convinceth me of sin? John 8:46), the writer of Hebrews said:

*Hebrews 4:15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.*

**6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.**

**Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not:** The very word abideth speaks of continuing in a certain way.

When someone abides at a certain residence, they don't just spend one night there, but they literally take up their abode there.

In Romans chapter six the apostle Paul tells the believer that in the dispensation of grace a believer doesn't have to sin, but in the very same chapter he tells us that we will sin.

The believer during the tribulation period will be living under a different system (the kingdom program) and he will be empowered differently than we are today to resist sin as they were in the early part of the book of Acts.

There they were practicing kingdom living and were selling all that they had, and they were sharing it, while all being in one accord with each other.

This will happen again during the tribulation period as there will be an absolute necessity for it in order for believers to survive this terrible time.

**7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous. 8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.**

**Even as he is righteous:** Christ will destroy the works of the devil at his appearing, all the world's systems that oppose God will be

torn down. Righteousness will reign as the kingdom of heaven comes down to this earth.

**The works of the devil:** Everything that Satan ever built in the past 6,000 years will all be destroyed, as well as whatever he does for the season he is loosed at the end of the millennial kingdom.

**9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.**

**Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin:** You are not born of God, because you have sinned since you have believed, haven't you?

Yes, you have. John is not talking to you! Be careful using terminology that is exclusive to Israel under the law, that was not meant for you.

This is not talking about a believer in the body of Christ today, but rather a recipient of the gospel of the kingdom during the tribulation period. Do not try to compare yourself with these people, you are not Israel under the law.

**His seed remaineth in him:** What is his seed?

*Luke 8:9 And his disciples asked him, saying, What might this parable be? 10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand. 11 Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of God.*

**He cannot sin, because he is born of God:** They will have supernatural help in the future to refrain from sin that we do not possess.

Today our inward man does not sin, but we still have the outer man that was born in sinful flesh, and we must die to the outer man.

**10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother. 11 For this is the message that ye heard from the beginning, that we should love one another.**

**The children of God:** Are those that are not sinning with the world in taking their mark.

These Jews that recognized that Jesus is the Son of God loved one another and John is instructing these tribulation saints that you can recognize another believer by their love towards one another that can only come from God.

**The children of the devil:** The ones who take the mark, and do not care for their brothers, and they will betray them to the government.

**12 Not as Cain, who was of that wicked one, and slew his brother. And wherefore slew he him? Because his own works were evil, and his brother's righteous.**

How were they to love one another? Not as Cain loved Abel! His relationship with his brother fluctuated based on how he felt at a particular moment.

Cain tolerated his brother when he didn't bother him, he probably appreciated Abel from time to time when he (Abel) did something for him.

The true test of love is when someone does something that is contrary to what we would want. Cain actually hated his brother as evidenced by his anger which led to his murdering his brother.

**13 Marvel not, my brethren, if the world hate you. 14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death. 15 Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer: and ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him.**

**We have passed from death unto life:** God will give these believers in the end times his Holy Spirit and they will love their brothers sacrificially because they are sons of God, and as sons, they will imitate the love of God in their life.

*John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.*

**16 Hereby perceive we the love of God, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren. 17 But whoso hath this world's good, and seeth his brother have need, and shutteth up his bowels of compassion from him, how dwelleth the love of God in him? 18 My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth.**

**We ought to lay down our lives for the brethren:** There will be many times when believer's lives will be at risk in that terrible day, and there will be many opportunities to help their fellow brothers and sisters in Christ.

Those that are true believers will be compelled to help one another. If someone refuses to help a believer in those days and they themselves claim to be a believer that claim will be baseless.

**19 And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him. 20 For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things. 21 Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, then have we confidence toward God. 22. And whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight.**

**Whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments:** We today do not have whatsoever we ask, because it is not necessary that God takes care of us in this time of great ease.

When half of the world has died because of war and famine, and a believer needs something God will provide in those days whatever they need.

**23 And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment. 24 And**

**he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.**

**And hereby we know that he abideth in us:** The key to a believer's ability to love one another in such a time as they will face is right here in this verse.

The holy Spirit will be given unto those who believe that Jesus is the Christ, to enable them to endure that terrible time unto the end.

#### Chapter Four

##### Try the spirits

**1 Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world. 2 Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: 3 And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world.**

**Try the spirits whether they are of God:** Since we are dealing with a tribulation period book, we need to look at this passage in that same light.

During the time of Jacob's trouble there will be many false spirits that will be extremely active because Satan will know that he has only a short time left on this earth before he will be cast into the bottomless pit.

Just as God sends out a hundred and forty-four thousand missionaries into the world, Satan will send out many spirits which will mislead people who will become the false prophets spoken about here in the last days.

The believers will need supernatural help at times to determine if what they are experiencing during that time is an act of God, or whether it is one of Satan's many deceiving spirits that will be prevalent in those days.

They will need to try the spirits when there is any question as to their true source and the means by which they will be able to do that is with what is their confession concerning the Christ, is Christ come in the flesh or not?

During this present dispensation of grace that we now live in the devil can't do many things because he has been restrained in many ways that he was not restrained during the time of Christ's first appearing.

This restraint will be lifted, and things will be much the same as they were two thousand years ago before the dispensation of grace was ushered in.

Demon possession especially in and around the nation of Israel will once again be prevalent in that coming time which will necessitate the need of God's people to have power over these devils as they did during the time Jesus and the apostles ministered.

**Ye have heard that it shall come:** What is the "it" that shall come? That spirit of antichrist, that John said was already active in his day.

**4 Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world. 5 They are of the world: therefore speak they of the world, and the world heareth them. 6 We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error.**

**Greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world:** Jesus Christ is in the believer, the spirit of antichrist is in the world.

The believing remnant in Israel is called little children in John's writing consistently. The "they" and "them" referred to here are the children of the wicked one.

Those that know God and are abiding in his truth will know when someone is speaking if there is truth in their message or not. Those that no longer abide in the truth will not be able to understand the truth anymore.

**7 Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of God; and every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God. 8 He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love.**

**Let us love one another:** Love is sacrificing for another person. Real love can only come from God who showed us how to love by His own example of the cross.

When a person understands that love and receives God's gift of love in the tribulation period, they will have the capacity to love others as Christ first loved them and they will be sons and daughters of God.

**9 In this was manifested the love of God toward us, because that God sent his only begotten Son into the world, that we might live through him.**

**God sent his only begotten Son into the world:** Jesus was begotten of God as his Son at his resurrection, not his incarnation: *Acts 13:33 God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath raised up Jesus again; as it is also written in the second psalm, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.*

**10 Herein is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.**

**The propitiation for our sins:** God sent his only begotten Son to be the all-sufficient sacrifice for us, not because he saw how lovely we were or were capable of being but because he first loved us.

**11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another.**

We ought to love others as God loved us. Sacrificially!

**12 No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.**

**His love is perfected in us:** This means his love is made perfect in us when we share the love of Christ with others.

When Christ dwelt among men Israel beheld him as the only begotten of the Father, but no one has seen him in all his glory.

Israel saw him veiled in human flesh, Peter James and John saw him transfigured, but one day we shall see him face to face.

**13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit. 14 And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world.**

**He hath given us of his Spirit:** The Jews saw and did testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world because he gave them the Spirit on the day of Pentecost.

You do not have the Spirit given to you today as Israel did on Pentecost and you know it. They were baptized all "WITH" the Holy Spirit back then (See Acts 1:5), we are baptized "BY" the Holy Spirit today into the body of Christ.

*1st Corinthians 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.*

**15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God. 16 And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.**

Again, the litmus test for saints in the tribulation period will be "What do you think of Jesus? Is he the Son of God? If they confess him at that time, he will never deny them and will reward them that love him.

**17 Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.**

**Herein is our love made perfect:** Made complete.

**The day of judgment:** This is not referring to a future judgment day by God after the tribulation period, but rather to one or many times in that period when a believer is challenged by the world to renounce Christ by word or deed.

If a person wants to continue to abide in Christ at these times, they have simply to ask God for the boldness to endure it and then stand for Christ regardless of the consequences and eternal life will await them, but if they turn away from God, he cannot not deny himself.

**18 There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love. 19 We love him, because he first loved us.**

If I doubt God I will fear, but if I have confidence that God is who he says he is, and Jesus is his Son, then I have the perfect love which can only come from God.

Perfect love casteth out fear, (perfect love is literally stronger than fear) because God's ways are better ways than those of the devil.

**20 If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen? 21 And this commandment have we from him, That he who loveth God love his brother also.**

If a man sees his brother hungry or thirsty and he has the means to relieve him of his suffering and he does not, the love of God does not abide in him as Christ taught his disciples while he was here the first time.

Believers will need to depend on the love and generosity of other believers during this time.

When you have the love of God abiding in you and you see your brother or sister suffering it is not so hard to see how God has blessed you and how you should bless them.

The importance of this will be magnified a thousand-fold as the world is engulfed in the tribulation period and God will require this attitude of his followers in that time. They will be expected to share what God has given to them with those who have not.

## Chapter Five

### The victory that overcometh the world

**1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.**

**Born of God:** A Jew both in Jesus' day (the 69<sup>th</sup> week of Daniel), and in the future (the 70<sup>th</sup> week of Daniel) have to believe that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God.

If a Jew said that he loves the Father, but rejects the Son, then he does not truly love the Father, because the Father has revealed his Son to Israel, and they rejected him the first time.

They will have a short time (seven years) to get it right the next time. Those that do accept him as the Christ are born of God.

**Him that begat:** God the Father.

**Him also that is begotten of him:** Jesus Christ.

**2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep his commandments.**

**And keep his commandments:** The measuring stick for loving the children of God in that great and terrible day is that they love God, and keep his commandments.

What commandments? Christians today are not under the ten commandments. We do not keep the sabbath day holy.

We don't even give the real sabbath day any thought because it is a day given to the Jew, and not to the church, and its Saturday, not Sunday.

God never changed the sabbath day to Sunday. John mentions loving the children of God because it will be important for believers in that day to care for one another during the time of Jacob's trouble to stay alive.

Those who allow other believers to die, or to suffer around them when they have the means to help them do not love God, and they will not obey him, so they will suffer the consequences.

**3 For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous.**

Again, this is not doctrine for the dispensation of grace being espoused here. You have to spiritualize almost this whole book to make it for us today under grace. The law will be in effect for the Jew during the tribulation period, and the Jew will be required to live by it.

**4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith. 5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God?**

**The victory that overcometh the world:** What is it that helps these people overcome such a terrible time? Their faith that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God! John 16:33 & Revelation 2:7.

The Jews during the tribulation period will need to overcome taking the mark of the beast, they will have to overcome the intense persecution of the antichrist, the hunger, the wars, and the famine.

Some think it is mean for God to force the Jew during this terrible time to be under the law again, but his commandments will not be grievous for them.

Remember that many of them are still trying to live the law unsuccessfully today in the dispensation of grace, so it won't be much of a change for them.

**6 This is he that came by water and blood, even Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness, because the Spirit is truth.**

**He that came by water:** This is a powerful statement of the personhood of the holy Spirit.

Impersonal "forces" like gravity cannot bear witness to anything because they are only a force. No force can ever be considered to be truth either, but it could be said about a person.

**Not by water only, but by water and blood:** Blood and water came out of Christ's side at his crucifixion when a soldier with a spear pierced his side.

**It is the Spirit that beareth witness:** John, who is the author of five books of the Bible, said something concerning Christ's death about water and blood that have some similarities to these verses:

*John 19:33 But when they came to Jesus, and saw that he was dead already, they brake not his legs: 34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. 35 And he that saw it bare record, and his record is true: and he knoweth that he saith true, that ye might believe.*

John said that he bore witness to the death of Christ, and that at his death both blood and water proceeded from Jesus' side when it was pierced.

Why is that important that John bore witness to this? Because the old testament was ratified by blood and water, and the new testament had to be ratified by better blood and water.

*Hebrews 9:18 Whereupon neither the first testament was dedicated without blood. 19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people,*

**7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.**

**And these three are one:** This verse is missing in many versions of the Bible. Quit reading those versions.

It is interesting that the verses that have important doctrinal truth in them seem to be the ones that are always deleted, or changed. I wonder who is behind that?

This is by far the best verse to use to explain the Godhead/Trinity, which is that all three persons of the Godhead are God. They are Co-equal, and at the same time they are all one.

**The Word:** Jesus is God in human flesh. If you take this verse and alter it, then Jesus is just a special guy, not God.

**8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.**

**There are three that bear witness in earth:** John here compares the perfect heavenly witness of all three members of the Godhead in verse seven with the earthly witness of himself in verse eight.

Verse nine tells us that verse eight is the witness of men. John 19:34-35.

While many have tried to explain verse eight, by explaining away verse seven as not even belonging in the scriptures, we hold the witness of God above professing believers, who attempt to explain them away.

**9 If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God which he hath testified of his Son. 10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. 11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. 12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.**

**He that hath the Son hath life:** The life spoken of is eternal life as seen clearly in verse eleven.

The witness from God is that if someone wants to have eternal life with God, they must believe in the name of the Son of God, because faith in Jesus, and him alone, bestows eternal life on those who believe.

**13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.**

**Believe on the name of the Son of God:** Notice that a special emphasis is placed on the people at the time of the tribulation period concerning the name of the Son of God.

The antichrist will exalt his name, and his number at that time, and to claim that Jesus is the Son of God will be considered treason at that time, punishable by death.

**14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: 15 And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.**

**This is the confidence that we have in him:** This is another verse which has been misunderstood because of people's inability to rightly divide.

Today many people become frustrated when they ask something that they believe is in accordance with his will today, and then they don't receive what they asked for.

In that day believers who ask in accordance with God's will have whatsoever they desire of the Lord, but today in the dispensation of grace it is not so.

We are to always ask for things in accordance with God's will in any age, but there is a greater need for those of that soon coming age.

Where sin does abound, as it will in the tribulation period, grace will much more abound. The gifts that many continually and unsuccessfully claim today, will be in full operation during this future day.

How many millions of sincere believers in this dispensation have tried to name and claim things that are promises for Israel in the tribulation period. They have become confused and lost faith in the word of God to be able to do what it says? Many!

There is no problem understanding the new testament however when we rightly divide the scripture and correctly determine what is for this present dispensation and what is for the next.

**16 If any man see his brother sin a sin which is not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it. 17 All unrighteousness is sin: and there is a sin not unto death.**

**There is a sin unto death:** Who is talking? The apostle John (one of the twelve apostles to the nation of Israel (the circumcision).

Who is John talking to? His brothers (fellow Jews) not to us. He, and the rest of the remnant of kingdom believers shared some things that no one in the dispensation of grace has every experienced.

*Hebrews 6:4 For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and had tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, 5 And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, 6 If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.*

We like to think of the Little flock/remnant as old testament saints, but the old testament saints didn't have their same experiences, neither were they baptized with the Holy Ghost as were these people John was addressing.

The majority of Christendom wants to make us equal to these first century kingdom saints, while many who rightly divide the word of truth want to place these kingdom saints under the old testament economy, and they were different.

The old testament prophets enquired and searched diligently to look into the things that these kingdom saints saw and experienced, but they were not the same under the same program.

The old testament prophets prophesied about the little flock and what would befall them.

They were not the same, and the Holy Ghost did not operate the same in both times, therefore the little flock was held to a higher standard than the saints prior to Christ's coming to Israel.

No old testament saint would dare say he didn't sin, but in the next verse in this chapter we read that if someone sinned, they

were not born of God. That sounds like what will be going on during the kingdom, that the little flock got a taste of those powers to come.

Because of the time period the remnant lived in and what had transpired with them they were held to a much higher standard than saints in earlier days prior to Christ's day. We in the body of Christ are not held to these same standards.

Israel is the focus in these verses, and in this book, and while Israel was still under the law, at this time the believer was under an even stricter set of rules regarding a soon coming kingdom.

There were sins unto death in the old testament, and sins that could be forgiven through repentance and sacrifices.

Since the remnant were not able to offer sacrifices anymore, they found themselves needing instructions from the twelve about just how to operate in the time they found themselves.

What happened to Ananias and Sapphira were interesting examples of sins unto death in this time period. They lied unto the Holy Ghost, and they lost their life for it.

Remember what happened shortly after this when Simon wanted the power of the Holy Ghost, so he could give it to whoever he laid his hands on?

He begged Peter and James to pray nothing would happen to him because of his sin. That doesn't happen today in the body of Christ. They had to endure unto the end:

*Hebrews 3:14 For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence steadfast unto the end;*

We must remember that when the rapture occurs, the dispensation of grace and the mystery program will have ended.

The prophecy program will be back in force, as the focus turns back to Israel, and its soon coming kingdom, and King, and things will go back judiciously to how they were when John penned this epistle for the little flock in his day.

This book, all the books from Hebrews through Revelation will be very pertinent books for that future flock of tribulation saints.

**There is a sin not unto death:** What is meant by this is that others sins can be forgiven when they are confessed by these tribulation saints, but if they take the mark of the beast they cannot be saved.

**18 We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.**

**Whoever is born of God sinneth not:** Is that you? Are you born of God? Do you live a life of sinless perfection? What is John talking about?

The correct question we should ask is who is John talking about, and to? He is talking about a future group of believers who will be given a special grace.

This is a glimpse of what it will be like when Jeremiah 31:31 is totally fulfilled, and God's laws are written on believing Israel's hearts in the kingdom. This is not talking about us today.

**19 And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness. 20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life. 21 Little children, keep yourselves from idols. Amen.**



**Little children, keep yourselves from idols:** What possible reason would a Jew in the tribulation period have for an idol?

There will be an image set up as the ultimate test of Satan for the Jews, just like the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. All that will not bow to his image, nor take his mark, will be enemies of the State, and they will be slated for extermination.

At the end of the time of Jacob's trouble all of Israel will be saved, and there is no way Satan, or his crowd can get around that because, it is written!

**The End**

## Second John

### The Elect lady

**1 The elder unto the elect lady and her children, whom I love in the truth; and not I only, but also all they that have known the truth; 2 For the truth's sake, which dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever.**

**The elder:** An mature spiritual leader. John is an apostle to the nation of Israel, and an elder.

**The elect lady:** The kingdom church John is writing to. They are the elect that serve God in getting the gospel of the kingdom out to Israel in the last days. Matthew 24:22-31, Luke 18:7 & 1st Peter 1:2.

**Her children:** Those members of the church that was dispersed in Acts 8. 2nd John 13 below.

**Whom I love in the truth:** The truth is that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. Matthew 16:18 & 3rd John 1:1.

**For the truth's sake, which dwelleth in us, and shall be with us for ever:** Once they enter their earthly kingdom these kingdom saints will never again doubt that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God.

**3 Grace be with you, mercy, and peace, from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father, in truth and love.**

**Grace be with you, mercy, and peace:** Again, notice the difference in John's use of the words grace and peace.

The word mercy is inserted in between them because they will need God's mercy in the time that many will face in the time of Jacob's trouble.

**In truth and love:** John also adds the words "In truth and love, to grace, mercy and peace. The truth is that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God.

John is writing to a people going through the tribulation period that will need mercy to endure unto the end of God pouring out his wrath on this Christ rejecting world.

Just like he has with all his saints in any age he gives them the grace to get through the fire, but make no mistake, once the dispensation of grace has passed at the rapture, God's enemies will then be made his footstool. Psalm 110:1.

**4 I rejoiced greatly that I found of thy children walking in truth, as we have received a commandment from the Father. 5 And now I beseech thee, lady, not as though I wrote a new commandment unto thee, but that which we had from the beginning, that we love one another. John 13:34.**

**I found of thy children walking in truth:** They believed that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God.

**A Commandment from the Father:** That we love one another. This meant they were to show others they loved them by sacrificing for them if they had a need.

**John 13:34 A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.**

John begged the members of this church to keep walking in truth by loving one another sacrificially, as Christ loved them.

**6 And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, That, as ye have heard from the beginning, ye should walk in it.**

**Love:** Is walking after his (the Father's) commandments.

If they are to manifest their faith by their works in the tribulation period, they will need to love their brethren and give a cup of cold water to someone in need, or a place to sleep. If they are in Jail, they should visit them, just as Jesus taught them to do.

**7 For many deceivers are entered into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver and an antichrist.**

**Many deceivers are entered into the world:** Satan is the opposite of love, and he has his deceivers gone out into the world to dilute, and to pollute the word of God by claiming that Jesus is not the Christ, the Son of the living God.

**An antichrist:** Those who say Jesus is not the Christ (God manifest in the flesh), is a deceiver and an antichrist, because they have pledged that they are aligned with Satan, and they will share his destiny in the Lake of fire.

**8 Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but that we receive a full reward.**

**Look to yourselves:** They were to examine themselves, so that they would receive a full reward. We in the body of Christ do not have works as a part of our salvation.

Paul said in Romans 11:6. **And if by grace then is it no more of works.** No more of works implies that works accompanied salvation under the law.

**Lose not those things which we have wrought:** The works that Israel did for God under the law.

**That we receive a full reward:** Matthew 5:12, 6:1, 4, 6, 18 & 10:41.

**Matthew 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works.**

**9 Whosoever transgresseth, and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God. He that abideth in the doctrine of Christ, he hath both the Father and the Son.**

**Abideth not in the doctrine of Christ:** Is the teaching that Jesus, who is a man, is also the anointed one, the Messiah, the Son of God, and that God came in the flesh (Immanuel). He is God with us. Read John 15:1-10 & Matthew 1:23.

**10 If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into your house, neither bid him God speed: 11 For he that biddeth him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds.**

**For he that biddeth him God speed is a partaker of his evil deeds:** This verse is primarily speaking to tribulation saints, but it is a practical thing for us to follow today as well.

**12 Having many things to write unto you, I would not write with paper and ink: but I trust to come unto you, and speak face to face, that our joy may be full. 13 The children of thy elect sister greet thee. Amen.**

John wanted to come and see this church that had formed after the scattering at the persecution of Stephen in Acts 8.

John ends this epistle to one **elect** lady (church) telling them that their sister church in Jerusalem salutes (says hello). Notice the word "**elect**" is used in this book twice.

**That your joy may be full:** John 15:11, 16:2 4 & 1<sup>st</sup> John 1:4.

**The children of thy elect sister greet thee:** A church is addressed as "the elect lady" in verse one, and now her elect sister is mentioned. These are two kingdom churches.

The elect sister is the church which was at Jerusalem. The elect lady and her children were those to whom this epistle was written to. Jewish believers in Asia minor (Turkey) most likely.

There are seven end-time churches written to by John mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three, and in 22:16.

The word elect is used by some to teach their false doctrine that God elects most people to go to Hell, and that there is nothing they can do about it. They use the word elect devoid of its biblical definition and context to do so.

The word elect is used only four times in the old testament, and they are all found in the book of Isaiah: Isaiah 42:1, 45:4, 65:2 & 65:22.

In Isaiah 42:1 Isaiah calls the Messiah God's elect and also calls him God's servant. In Isaiah 45:4 Israel is called his elect as well as in both verses in chapter 65 and both passages refer to God's elect as being his servants.

From the whole old testament, we learn from these four verses that **both Israel, and her Messiah are called God's elect**, and to be elect they must be God's servants also.

The gospels are all about Christ (**God's Elect Servant**) coming to Israel (God's Elect servants) while they were still under the law of Moses to redeem them that were under the law (Galatians 4:4).

Matthew uses the word "elect" three times as does Mark, and each is a duplicate verse from the other gospel telling us the same thing.

They are all directed to Israel (God's elect servant) going through the tribulation period as you can see in Matthew 24:22, 24 & 31.

Luke only uses the word "elect" once in chapter 18 and verse seven which is talking about the judgment at the end of the tribulation period of those who had persecuted his "**elect**" (the believing remnant of Israel).

The word "**elect**" is used by Paul only five times in his epistles. Romans 8:33 is a reference to God's elect as being un-chargeable, which means you cannot lay a charge against them because they are all under the blood of Christ.

Colossians 3:12 Paul is telling the Colossians to do as the "elect" do. 2<sup>nd</sup> Timothy 2:10 is a reference to Israel and the remnant according to the doctrine of Election.

2<sup>nd</sup> Timothy 5:21 says, Elect "Angels". In Titus 1:1 the term God's elect, is a reference to saints in the dispensation of grace today. How are we elect today? We are elect because we are in Christ (God's elect).

The word "**elect**" is mentioned in 1<sup>st</sup> Peter as he writes to the Jews scattered in the first century from the Jerusalem church at the persecution that arose surrounding Stephen. See 1st Peter 1:2 and in 2:6 where it is referencing God's Son as in Isaiah 42:1.

Lastly, it is mentioned in this epistle, and it is a reference to two separate churches, one that John is writing to, and the other one that he is writing from in Jerusalem.

Nowhere in scripture is the word **elect** used to teach that God elects to send one group to heaven, and the other group to Hell all because God is sovereign and can do what he wants.

God is sovereign, but he is also just, and he will not send anyone to hell who will believe the gospel of grace. You could look up the word election, and elected, and elects, but you won't find the unconditional election doctrine in those verses either.

The only verse out of the 26 verses that you could use totally void of its context to teach that God elects some to go to heaven and some to go to hell is Romans 9:11.

Which teaches something altogether different. Context, context, context! Is Romans 9:12 in the Bible? It's in mine. My Bible first of all tells me that the context is Israel. Try reading the chapter from the beginning.

All it says is that "the elder (Esau) shall **SERVE**" the younger (Jacob). There is that dirty word associating the elect, and election to servants and service. Context, context, context. What ever happened to context?

When was the quote in Romans 9:13 said by God? Was it before Esau and Jacob were born? No.

It is in Malachi 3:2 almost 1,000 years after their death, and the statement is made by God, because the one despised his birth right.

It was way after the fact that he rejected his birth right for some pottage that God said he hated one and loved the other. One really wanted the birth right. Hmmm, that sounds like whosoever wills to me.

**The End**

## Third John

### The Truth

#### 1 The elder unto the wellbeloved Gaius, whom I love in the truth.

**The elder:** John was called the elder, and it was not mainly because of his age, but it was mostly because of his position of leadership as an apostle. Elders however are not young men.

**The wellbeloved:** Mark 12:6. In Romans 16:5 we see the only other time the word “wellbeloved” is used. It is spoken of Epäenatus who was the first grace believer in the region of Achaia. Corinth is in Achaia.

**Gaius:** The name Gaius is mentioned five times in scriptures, twice in Acts 19-20, Romans & 1<sup>st</sup> Corinthians.

Gaius was from Derbe in Macedonia. The question is, are all five references found in scripture referring to the same individual.

I believe there are two Gaius’ mentioned in the Bible, one who was Paul’s companion in grace, and the other mentioned here, who was a partner with the twelve apostles in the kingdom program.

Gaius was led to the Lord by Paul, and he baptized Gaius there in Corinth, who let Paul stay with him while he wrote the book of Romans.

He is mentioned as being from Macedonia in Romans 16:23. The Gaius in this epistle, however, is working with the circumcision believers, not the grace believers, which is why John (an apostle of the circumcision) is writing to him to advise him.

**Whom I love in the truth:** The truth is that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. That is what all of the circumcision believers had to believe in order to enter into their kingdom.

This Peter learned from Christ as he responded to a question asked of him by Jesus:

*Matthew 16:13 When Jesus came into the coasts of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, Whom do men say that I the Son of man am? 14 And they said, Some say that thou art John the Baptist: some, Elias; and others, Jeremias, or one of the prophets. 15 He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am? 16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God. 17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven. 18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.*

#### 2 Beloved, I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth.

**Beloved:** Gaius was also called the wellbeloved in verse one. It was John’s wish that Gaius prosper as much physically as he had already prospered spiritually.

John mentioned that he loved Gaius in the truth. The world knows nothing of the love that John talks about here.

John prays for Gaius’ health, and for his finances to prosper as well as his soul has prospered. John could not heal him at this point as Israel’s kingdom signs were coming, or already had come to an end by this late time.

#### 3 For I rejoiced greatly, when the brethren came and testified of the truth that is in thee, even as thou walkest in the truth. 4 I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth.

**The brethren came:** Who are the brethren that came and testified of the truth that was in Gaius? Other Jewish kingdom believers.

John tells us here that he is glad that Gaius was walking in the truth. This helps us to discover that there had to be more than one Gaius mentioned in the Bible.

Not only was he trusting that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God, but he was walking in the truth that we learned about in John’s epistles.

Gaius was faithful to the word of God as it proceeded forth out of the mouth of John, and the other apostles to the nation of Israel. John was Gaius’ father in the faith, just as Paul was to the Corinthians. 1<sup>st</sup> Corinthians 4:14-16.

#### 5 Beloved, thou doest faithfully whatsoever thou doest to the brethren, and to strangers; 6 Which have borne witness of thy charity before the church: whom if thou bring forward on their journey after a godly sort, thou shalt do well:

**Thou doest faithfully whatsoever thou doest to the brethren, and to strangers:** The brethren, was a reference to the Jews, while the strangers was a reference to the kingdom saints scattered abroad as mentioned in Acts 8:1 surrounding the persecution that arose concerning Stephen.

**Whom if thou bring forward on their journey after a godly sort, thou shalt do well:** John was requesting Gaius to help those whom he sent there financially, so that they could continue ministering to others.

#### 7 Because that for his name's sake they went forth, taking nothing of the Gentiles. 8 We therefore ought to receive such, that we might be fellowhelpers to the truth.

**For his name’s sake:** Jesus’ name’s sake.

**Taking nothing of the Gentiles:** Believers should have charity one to the other. John was encouraging Gaius and the brethren there to help those that were ministering as they were on their journey, as it would help them reach others.

#### 9 I wrote unto the church: but Diotrephes, who loveth to have the preeminence among them, receiveth us not.

**I wrote unto the church:** John tried to write Gaius’ church, but those he sent the letter with were not received by one of its members.

**Diotrephes:** Satan always sends someone with a loudmouth to intimidate the meeker members of the church into doing what he wants.

Diotrephes opposed God because he was opposing God’s man, the apostle John, and he would not allow one of the twelve apostles to edify their church.

#### 10 Wherefore, if I come, I will remember his deeds which he doeth, prating against us with malicious words: and not content therewith, neither doth he

**himself receive the brethren, and forbiddeth them that would, and casteth them out of the church.**

**Prating against us with malicious words:** The word “prating” means to talk foolishly against someone.

Malicious means that he was intending to do harm to John and the brethren with his words to maintain his control over the members of Gaius’ church.

**11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God.**

**Follow not that which is evil, but that which is good:** John tells his readers, especially those under Diotrophes' "ministry" to not follow that, or him, that is evil, but follow that which is good.

In the next verse he tells them of someone that is a good person for them to follow, Demetrius.

**12 Demetrius hath good report of all men, and of the truth itself: yea, and we also bear record; and ye know that our record is true.**

**Demetrius hath a good report of all men:** This is a requirement for anyone to be a leader in a church, which disqualified Diotrophes from the position he held.

**And of the truth itself:** This could not be said of Diotrophes, that he was of the truth sadly. He no doubt believed that Jesus was the Christ, but he did not abide in the truth as John and Gaius were.

Under their program, a circumcision believer had to abide in the truth. Which is what is found in the gospels and early Acts, along with the Hebrew epistles (Hebrews through Revelation).

Diotrephes departed from the truth. Under Israel’s program there were eternal consequences for doing that.

We in the church which is Christ’s body today are eternally sealed until the day of redemption and can never lose our salvation, that was not so for the circumcision believers.

**13 I had many things to write, but I will not with ink and pen write unto thee: 14 But I trust I shall shortly see thee, and we shall speak face to face. Peace be to thee. Our friends salute thee. Greet the friends by name.**

John said what needed to be said for the time being. Somethings were better left unsaid, until they could say them in person. John wasn’t going to tip off Diotrephes any more than he had.

**The End**

## Jude

### Contend for the faith

The book of Jude is a Hebrew epistle written early during the book of Acts, prior to Israel's being blinded in part for rejecting Jesus as their Christ.

*Romans 11:25 For I would not, brethren, that ye should be ignorant of this mystery, lest ye should be wise in your own conceits; that blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in.*

Jude is often called one of the "general" epistles by those who do not understand how to rightly divide the word of truth (2nd Timothy 2:15). There is nothing general about any of the Hebrew epistles that follow Paul's epistles to the body of Christ. They are different.

The Hebrew epistles are written to Israel, and they are doctrinally for them in the early Acts period, as well as during the time of Jacob's trouble as you will see while you study these epistles.

The words in Jude are very similar to many of the words found in 2nd Peter, which is another Hebrew epistle, written to the twelve tribes of Israel that were scattered abroad.

These two epistles are practically identical messages, and they even have verses that are almost word for word copies of the other at times.

### **1 Jude, the servant of Jesus Christ, and brother of James, to them that are sanctified by God the Father, and preserved in Jesus Christ, and called:**

**Jude:** Also called Judas (Judah). Judah is Hebrew translated to English, while Judas is Greek translated into English.

**And brother of James:** Jude is the brother of James. We see also another person named Judas that is one of the twelve apostles mentioned in John 14:22 as "not Iscariot" and also in Acts 1:13.

James here is not Jude's brother, he is not James the son of Alphaeus found in Matthew 10:3, nor is it James the son of Zebedee, the brother of John (the sons of thunder) found in Matthew 10:2.

That means that he is not one of the twelve apostles. See verses 17 and 18 below and you will hear from Jude himself that he is not one of the twelve apostles to the nation of Israel. Remember that the twelve apostles had a requirement to be one of the twelve.

*Acts 1:20 For it is written in the book of Psalms, Let his habitation be desolate, and let no man dwell therein: and his bishoprick let another take. 21 Wherefore of these men which have companied with us all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, 22 Beginning from the baptism of John, unto that same day that he was taken up from us, must one be ordained to be a witness with us of his resurrection.*

When we read about Jesus' half-brothers, one was named James, and another was named Judas (Jude), but as late as three years into Jesus' ministry neither of them had begun to follow Jesus, let alone since the baptism of John.

*John 7:2 Now the Jews' feast of tabernacles was at hand. 3 His brethren therefore said unto him, Depart hence, and go into Judaea, that thy disciples also may see the works that thou doest. 4 For there is no man that doeth any thing in secret, and he*

*himself seeketh to be known openly. If thou do these things, shew thyself to the world. 5 For neither did his brethren believe in him.*

If they did not believe in Jesus as the Christ, then they could not have been a part of the twelve since the baptism of John. Could Jude be the half-brother of the Lord, who does have another half-brother named James?

Yes, he could, and was. What about the James that is killed in Acts 12? No, it is not him, as he is John's brother, not the brother of anyone named Judas.

*Acts 12:2 And he killed James the brother of John with the sword.*

**To them that are sanctified by God the Father:** Just because we are sanctified in this dispensation of grace does not mean that God did not sanctify others in other ages, it is obvious that he does from this verse.

**And preserved in Jesus Christ, and called:** Many well-meaning people have used this first verse in Jude as a proof verse for eternal security, it is not.

This is a Hebrew epistle that deals with Israel's kingdom saints in the first century, and those tribulation saints after the dispensation of grace is over while Israel is going through the time of Jacob's trouble.

In that time, she has to endure unto the end of that time period to enter into her kingdom as Matthew 24:13 says.

### **2 Mercy unto you, and peace, and love, be multiplied.**

**Mercy unto you:** In the tribulation period they will be in need multiplied mercies from God to see them through it.

**Be Multiplied:** This is a word used by Peter in both of his epistles.

#### The key verse of this epistle

### **3 Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints.**

**The common salvation:** The purpose of this epistle was to preserve the message of salvation that was common among those kingdom saints that had been scattered abroad after the persecution of Stephen. Acts 8:1.

Israel is mentioned as a "commonwealth" in Ephesians when describing our separation from them. We "Gentiles" were outside the "commonwealth" of Israel. That message was the "so great salvation" mentioned by the writer of the book of Hebrews in Hebrews 2:3.

This is not the same gospel that Paul preached (1st Corinthians 15:1-4). Peter calls the common salvation, "like precious faith" in 2nd Peter 1:1. It is the gospel of the kingdom found in the gospels. Matthew 4:17 & 24:14.

**Ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints:** This is that "so great salvation" spoken about in Hebrews that was delivered unto the twelve apostles.

*Hebrews 2:1 Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip. 2 For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense*

*of reward; 3 How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him; 4 God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will?*

It is also an epistle to future Jews living under that same program during the tribulation period after the body of Christ has been raptured into heaven, when Israel is left to go through the time of Jacob's trouble. Jeremiah 31:31.

We are to contend today for the mystery program that Paul preached and the gospel that was given to him, just like these are to contend for the kingdom message delivered to Israel by Christ and the Twelve.

#### Ungodly men

**4 For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.**

**Ordained to this condemnation:** This is speaking of false teachers in Israel in a different age/dispensation than us today who are in the dispensation of grace.

People will sneak in and try to infiltrate and dilute the little flock in the tribulation period into believing the lie program of the devil.

These people are agents of the devil, sent in by him in his plan that he devised (ordained) long ago to try to deceive Israel (the kingdom people) into rejecting their king, and the soon coming kingdom.

Satan has a plan that he has ordained for the future, but it is terribly flawed because it relies on the wisdom of this world, and not on God's wisdom which is flawless. Paul calls Satan's plan the course of this world. Ephesians 2:2.

**Turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness:** Sexual immorality. They were saying God is not pouring out his wrath immediately, so he is allowing them their fleshly desires.

**Denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ:** The ultimate act of denying the Lord Jesus Christ will be in taking the mark which will condemn all that take it, because they will be saying that the Lord cannot supply their needs if they trust in him during that time. Revelation 13.

**5 I will therefore put you in remembrance, though ye once knew this, how that the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed them that believed not.**

Jude has to remind these saints that their ancestors were delivered from Pharaoh, and yet they perished in the wilderness because they did not believe that God could take care of them in the land. They were saved physically as a nation, but they were later destroyed individually as all the unbelievers died in the wilderness.

The law would help them to be light in the land, and they would need to remember their nation's past mistakes, and not make the same mistakes during the tribulation period, or they too would not be allowed to enter into their rest.

Those of this future generation need to contend for the faith once delivered unto them, or they also will suffer similar consequences.

#### The angels that sinned

**6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.**

**The angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation:** Their leaving their first habitation speaks of them leaving their positions as servants of God in the heavens to follow Satan.

These special angels also left to take the daughters of men as wives and produced the giants that we read about in Genesis 6. Now he reminds the remnant of believers that God punished the angels that thought they could do as they wanted.

God will punish those going through the tribulation period as well if they think they can pick and choose what they want to believe and do then.

**He hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day:** Notice the similarities with 2<sup>nd</sup> Peter:

*2nd Peter 2:4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;*

**7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrha, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.**

**Giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh:** Trusting in the works of the flesh is a first step in a downward plummet that leads people to give themselves over to the flesh and its deceitfulness. Romans 1:18-32.

Sodom and Gomorrha are examples of what can happen to cities, or individuals, who give in to the desires of the flesh. They begin to leave that natural use of the opposite sex, and begin to burn in their lust for the same flesh.

**Are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire:** This is speaking of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah who were destroyed when God reigned down fire and brimstone upon them and then cast them all into hell.

This will also happen to all those who take the mark of the beast during the tribulation period. Ezekiel 38:22.

*Genesis 13:12 Abram dwelled in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelled in the cities of the plain, and pitched his tent toward Sodom. 13 But the men of Sodom were wicked and sinners before the LORD exceedingly.*

*Genesis 19:24 Then the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the LORD out of heaven; 25 And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground.*

**8 Likewise also these filthy dreamers defile the flesh, despise dominion, and speak evil of dignities.**

**Despise dominion:** This is a reference to those who criticize those that God has placed in spiritual authority over them during the time they are in. Hebrews 13:7, 17 & 24.

They despised the 12 apostles and their epistles just like they will the leaders of the tribulation churches. When they speak evil

against the leaders of the remnant/little flock they speak evil of Christ.

#### The body of Moses

**9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said,**

#### The Lord rebuke thee.

**The body of Moses:** This was primarily about how Michael approached the devil in not railing on him, but the devils, and these who despise dignities do rail on dignities. Deuteronomy 34:1-8.

When do we find Michael actually contending with the devil in the Bible? In Revelation 12, when he is cast out of heaven at the mid-point of the tribulation period.

*Revelation 12:7 And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, 8 And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. 9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

Who tells us about Michael contending with the devil over Moses' body? Jude. When did this battle take place according to the Bible?

The Bible doesn't say when it took place, only that it was past tense when Jude mentions it. When Michael was contending with the devil, he disputed with him over the body of Moses.

Could Jude be speaking prophetically of a battle that is yet future since he is writing to Israel about surviving the tribulation period? It is possible.

Satan doesn't want the body of Moses to be resurrected in the tribulation period because Moses appeared with Elijah on the mount of transfiguration with Jesus, and he will also appear again with Elijah in the tribulation period.

Satan thinks by capturing Moses' body he can prevent his resurrection in the tribulation period and ultimately in the kingdom.

Michael when sent to prevent Satan's attempted body snatching disputed with him, and did so within respect for the power given unto Satan. Michael respected that, and said what needed to be said to accomplish his mission, "the Lord rebuke thee".

**A railing accusation:** Cursing someone. The opposite of blessing them. 1<sup>st</sup> Peter 3:9 & 2<sup>nd</sup> Peter 2:11.

#### Brute beasts

**10 But these speak evil of those things which they know not: but what they know naturally, as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves.** *2nd Peter 2:12.*

**As brute beasts:** Like an irrational animal.

#### Similarities found in 2nd Peter

*2nd Peter 2:1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. 2 And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of. 3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of*

*you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.*

#### The angels that sinned:

That kept not their first estate Jude 6.

**4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;**

#### Noah the eighth person

See Enoch the seventh from Adam Jude 14

**5 And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; 6 And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrha into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; 7 And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked: 8 (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds;) 9 The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished: 10 But chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous are they, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities. 11 Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.** *Jude 6-10.*

**12 But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption;** *Jude 10.*

**13 And shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, as they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots they are and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceivings while they feast with you; 14 Having eyes full of adultery, and that cannot cease from sin; beguiling unstable souls: an heart they have exercised with covetous practices; cursed children: 15 Which have forsaken the right way, and are gone astray, following the way of Balaam the son of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness; 16 But was rebuked for his iniquity: the dumb ass speaking with man's voice forbad the madness of the prophet.** *Jude 11 & Revelation 2:14.*

**17 These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever. 18 For when they speak great swelling words of vanity, they allure through the lusts of the flesh, through much wantonness, those that were clean escaped from them who live in error. 19 While they promise them liberty, they themselves are the servants of corruption: for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage. 20 For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them**



than the beginning. **21** For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them. **22** But it is happened unto them according to the true proverb, **The dog is turned to his own vomit again; and the sow that was washed to her wallowing in the mire.**

#### The Error of Balaam

Numbers 22-24, Joshua 13:22, 2nd Peter 2:15 & Revelation 2:14

**11 Woe unto them! for they have gone in the way of Cain, and ran greedily after the error of Balaam for reward, and perished in the gainsaying of Core.**

**The way of Cain:** To think that the works of their hands are good enough to satisfy God without simple faith. It is evident to all that Cain believed in God, but he didn't obey God and offer by faith what God wanted for a sacrifice.

Tribulation saints will be offering the works of their hands and minds, but they will not satisfy God, only faith which obeys without trying to alter God's request to appease the masses.

These false teachers in this tribulation period will despise those in authority in the remnant churches because they are of their father the devil.

**The error of Balaam:** Balaam was a prophet hired by Balak (Balak) the king of the Moabites to curse Israel, near Jericho. Numbers 22-25.

*Revelation 2:14 But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balak to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication.*

They will say Christ's sacrifice isn't necessary and they can offer the works of the flesh and it will appeal to the masses. These are profiteers, not prophets, hirelings.

**The gainsaying of Core:** This is Korah who murmured against Moses and Aaron, saying everyone was holy whom the earth swallowed up with his family. Numbers 16:1-3.

**12 These are spots in your feasts of charity, when they feast with you, feeding themselves without fear: clouds they are without water, carried about of winds; trees whose fruit withereth, without fruit, twice dead, plucked up by the roots; 13 Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever.**

**These are spots in your feasts of charity:** The Greek word spot is "spilos" where we get the English word spill from. It is what it is, a blemish, or a spot on something.

In this case the spots (plural) are sinners at a feast of charity, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness.

According to this verse the mark of the beast comes first and the sore which is noisome and grievous falls upon those who already have the mark. The spots referred to in Jude 12 and 23 are not the mark of the beast.

Revelation 16:2 means what it says. Besides, the spots are people in these two verses that defile the tribulation saints' garments.

*2nd Peter 2:13 And shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, as they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots they are and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceivings while they feast with you; Jude 23.*

Those who change what God requires do not have a good ending. They are useless to the believer; in fact, they are there to slow the believer down and trip them up at every corner.

They are constantly trying to get you to compromise and do things in a way that they would like that makes them feel good instead of God. They are like spots on a pure garment.

**The blackness of darkness:** This is a further elaboration of Jude verse six where there are everlasting chains of darkness to arrest those angels who left their first estate.

*Matthew 8:12 But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.*

The darkness mentioned above is a complete darkness, described as a blackness. They will be judged!

*2nd Peter 2:17 These are wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest; to whom the mist of darkness is reserved for ever.*

#### Ungodly

**14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying,**

**Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, 15 To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.**

*Deuteronomy 33:2 & Hebrews 11:5.*

**Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these:** The these are the ones that will have judgment executed on them in the tribulation period.

James warns the believer that the world will throw all kinds of things at the believers in those days to get them to compromise. So, if everyone else is doing what they are doing, the believer must hold themselves to a higher standard than the lost world, especially at that time.

Where did Jude get his information about Enoch's prophecy from? The Holy Spirit gave it to him, because it is not mentioned in the old testament anywhere.

The purpose of the book of Jude is to pronounce Judgment on the nation of Israel that oppose and persecute the remnant of true believers in Israel (The Israel of God). Galatians 6:16.

Jude talks about Enoch being the seventh from Adam, while Peter in 2nd Peter 2:5 talks about Noah being the eighth person. He was not the eighth from Adam, that would have been Methuselah. He was the eighth person on the Ark.

Eight in scripture means a new beginning. When is a Jewish child circumcised? On the eighth day, because God started something new with Abraham (Circumcision) in establishing his own nation out of Abraham's loins.

**16 These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaketh**

**great swelling words, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage.**

These are those who care about the numbers, the offerings, and the prestige and admiration of others.

**17 But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ; 18 How that they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts. 19 These be they who separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit.**

**The apostles of the Lord Jesus Christ; 18 How they told you:** Jude does not put himself in as one of the twelve apostles and even distances himself from them making it clear when he mentions the apostles, he uses the word "they" instead of "we."

Many devout religious people will try to draw the believers away to what everyone else is doing, and they will deceive many. Mockers will try to embarrass believers in the tribulation period away from what they believe, but they should stand firm unto the end.

Notice that Jude calls it the last time. It was the last time. The prophecy program got interrupted, when the mystery program was ushered in.

Once the mystery program runs its course and ends at the Rapture the prophecy program will pick up right where it left off at the end of the last time.

There is also a last time in the mystery program. When you rightly divide make sure you discern which "last time" the Bible is speaking about, Israel's or the body of Christ's.

An easy way to figure it out is if it is in the Hebrew epistles it is speaking about Israel's last time, not ours. Notice that Peter's second epistles says the same thing as Jude's epistle does:

**2nd Peter 3:3 Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts,**

**20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,**

**Building up yourselves on your most holy faith:** How will someone in the tribulation period build up themselves on their most holy faith? By praying in the Holy Ghost.

They will be praying for the Holy Ghost as the apostles did in the upper room in the book of Acts.

This is not something we can do today. We are not Israel receiving that which was promised to them in Joel chapter two and partially fulfilled on Pentecost.

Their faith in Jesus as the Christ, the Son of the living God is their foundation, just as it was in the gospel time period when the gospel of the kingdom was being preached to Israel by Jesus and the twelve apostles.

They will need to build upon that foundation the advanced principles found in Hebrews through Revelation, and they are to pray in the Holy Ghost to guide them and to give them boldness to empower them in those last days.

**21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.**

**Keep yourselves in the love of God:** This is something that the apostle of the Gentiles never told any of us in the body of Christ

to do in this dispensation of grace today because this epistle is not for us today. 2nd Peter 3:17.

This epistle is for those Jews in the first century that were following the kingdom program, and for those of the tribulation period after the church is raptured out. We today in the dispensation of grace cannot keep ourselves in the love of God. God keeps us.

**22 And of some have compassion, making a difference: 23 And others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.**

**Pulling them out of the fire:** The ultimate goal of earnestly contending for the faith once delivered to the saints in that program is to reach them before it is too late with the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 4:17-23.

**The garment spotted by the flesh:** The garment is their righteousness as it is stated in the book of the Revelation, it has nothing to do with the mark of the beast being a spot like a leopard has.

**Revelation 19:8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.**

**24 Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy,**

**Him that is able to keep you from falling:** It is only Jesus Christ who can keep these kingdom saints from falling. Notice how Peter ends his second epistle very similarly:

**2nd Peter 3:17 Ye therefore, beloved, seeing ye know these things before, beware lest ye also, being led away with the error of the wicked, fall from your own steadfastness.**

Both Peter and Jude warn their readers about falling from their own steadfastness, and not being led away with the error of the wicked.

It's almost as if Jude or Peter copied most of their epistle from the other. When it all comes from the same source, the Holy Spirit, then it will all agree. They will be faultless only because they will have Christ's righteousness.

**25 To the only wise God our Saviour, be glory and majesty, dominion and power, both now and ever. Amen.**

We have noticed in this epistle of twenty-five verses the similarities with all of the doctrine found in Hebrews, James, Peter, and John's epistles, which also line up with the four gospels and the first part of the book of Acts.

They do not however line up doctrinally with the doctrines laid out for the church, which is Christ's body, which are found only in the Pauline epistles. This epistle ends with a similar ending found in 2nd Peter, and the same theme and numerous verses are almost the same word for word.

The Holy Spirit is the author of both of these two Hebrew epistles written to Hebrew believers of the gospel of the kingdom message proclaimed by Jesus and the twelve.

**The End**

## The Revelation of Jesus Christ

### Chapter One

#### 1 The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John:

**The Revelation of Jesus Christ:** This book is the revealing of Jesus Christ, not the concealing of Jesus Christ. It is written so Israel can recognize their Messiah when he returns.

This title is also mentioned in 1<sup>st</sup> Peter 1:13, and it refers to the time when Jesus returns to earth at the end of the tribulation period, when every eye shall see him.

*1st Peter 1:13 Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;*

**To shew unto his servants:** John is identified as one of his servants, so the servants mentioned here must also be servants like John.

The servants are the Jewish believers during the times spoken about in this book, that both hear, and keep the things written in it. Leviticus 25:55, Isaiah 65:9, and Revelation 7:3-4 are places where Israel alone is identified as God's servants.

**Things which must shortly come to pass:** Most of the events in the book of the Revelation will happen during the seven-year tribulation period. Revelation 22:6.

**He sent and signified it by his angel:** This same angel is mentioned in Revelation 22:16 which uses the word "show" instead of "signified" to let you know the angel wanted the prophecy to be shown to God's servants.

God gave the revelation of Jesus Christ to his Son, to give it to his servant John, to shew unto his servants Israel, the things which must shortly come to pass.

To help his servants to endure the 70th week of Daniel that has been determined upon them by God, so that they may enter into the kingdom. Daniel 9:24-27.

#### 2 Who bare record of the word of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he saw.

**The word of God:** John bare record of the word of God in that it was sent to him by God's angel. 1 John 1:1.

**The testimony of Jesus Christ:** This refers to the spirit of prophecy mentioned in Revelation 19:10.

**All things that he saw:** The things of the future that he saw when he was caught up in the spirit on the Lord's day.

#### 3 Blessed is he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein: for the time is at hand.

**Blessed is he that readeth:** Blessed is used seven times in this book. Revelation 14:13, 16:15, 19:9, 20:6, 22:7 & 22:14.

The person who does all three things in this verse will be blessed by being allowed access into the kingdom. You, in the body of Christ today, cannot do these things as you are not Israel in the time of Jacob's trouble.

**And they that hear the words of this prophecy:** Some in the tribulation period may not have access to a copy of the word of this prophecy, but they get to hear it, and they keep what they have heard, they will be blessed with eternal life in the kingdom.

**And keep those things which are written therein:** This is speaking to those who are the believing remnant during the tribulation period, not to you and I today.

**For the time is at hand:** The time of Jacob's trouble (Israel's) mentioned in Jeremiah 30:7, Matthew 3:2, 4:17, 10:7, James 5:8 & 1st Peter 4:7.

#### 4 John to the seven churches which are in Asia:

##### Grace be unto you, and peace, from him which is, and which was, and which is to come; and from the seven Spirits which are before his throne;

**To the seven churches which are in Asia:** John is speaking to seven actual churches, and that will exist in the tribulation period in what was previously known as Asia Minor, or modern-day Turkey.

They are not symbolic churches that represent seven church ages. There is not one verse of scriptural evidence to support such a teaching. The Bible teaches the imminent return of the Lord Jesus Christ, he can return at any moment.

You cannot have the doctrine of Jesus' imminent return, and also claim that Jesus has to wait to return until all seven church ages run their course.

This "theory" was strongly, and wrongly promoted by Clarence Larkin, an early dispensationalist, who did a lot of good with his dispensational charts, but some of them have some errors in them.

Things at the beginning of the tribulation period will be just like they were in the first century when Jewish believers were persecuted and had to flee from their homeland to neighboring countries. Acts 8:1.

**Grace be unto you, and peace:** This is different from what Paul says in his epistles.

Paul always says that grace and peace are from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ, but John says that this grace and peace comes from Jesus three different times, and from the seven spirits which are before his throne.

**From him which is:** This is present tense in John's day, when Jesus gave these revelations to John. Jesus was alive, and seated at the right hand of the Father till his enemies be made his footstool. Psalm 110:1.

**Which was:** This is past tense in that this speaks about Jesus' earthly ministry to the nation of Israel.

**And which is to come:** This is future tense speaking about Jesus' return to set up his kingdom. Revelation 2:5, 16, 3:11, 22:7 & 12-20. Contrast this verse with the beast in Revelation 17:8. He is the Antichrist impersonating Christ in many ways.

**From the seven Spirits which are before his throne:** These are the seven lamps of fire burning before the throne.

*Revelation 4:5 And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God.*

These are also the seven eyes of the Lord, which are sent forth into all the earth mention in Zechariah 3:9, 4:10 & Revelation 5:6.

**5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,**

**The faithful witness:** Jesus Christ was faithful in that he spoke only those things which he had heard from his Father. John 8:14, 29, Deuteronomy 7:9, Isaiah 49:7, Jeremiah 42:5 and Revelation 3:14.

**The first begotten of the dead:** Jesus was the first to die, and rise again from the dead, never to see death again. Colossians 1:18.

*Psalm 2:7 Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.* This happened at his resurrection.

**The prince of the kings of the earth:** There is coming a day when he shall be King of kings, and Lord of Lords. Revelation 17:1 4 & 19:16.

**Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood:** Jesus came to die and to shed his blood for the forgiveness of sins. 1st John 1:7, Hebrews 9:12, 13:12 & Revelation 7:14.

**6 And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.**

**And hath made us kings and priests:** The "us" that is spoken of that are to be made kings and priests are the servants mentioned in the first verse of this letter.

They are the Jewish believers enduring the time of Jacob's trouble. Not believers in this present dispensation of grace. You are not a priest in the dispensation of grace.

*Exodus 19:6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.*

In 1st Peter 2:5-9 Peter is writing to Jewish saints scattered throughout Pontus, Cappadocia, Asia, etc., not to us. Acts 2:9 mentions that these same Jews were at Pentecost. 1st Peter 1:1.

*1st Peter 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. 6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Zion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded. 7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner, 8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed. 9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:*

*1st Peter 1:1 Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia,*

**To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever:** Jesus will have glory and dominion forever and he will reign on the earth with his servants (believing Israel) for a thousand years, while the church will be in heavenly places. Daniel 7:14, & 1st Peter 5:11.

**7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him:**

**and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.**

**He cometh with clouds:** This speaks of Jesus' revealing to the world at his return when he comes in judgment. Daniel 7:13, Zechariah 12:10, and in Acts 1:9-11 where two men prophesy it as well in white apparel.

**And every eye shall see him:** This occurs at the end of the time of Jacob's trouble. Revelation 19:11-21.

This is not the rapture of the church which happened seven years earlier. The rapture is us going to meet Jesus in the clouds, and the only ones who will see him, will be those in the clouds.

**And they also which pierced him:** This is a reference to Israel. Psalm 22:16 & Zechariah 12:10.

**All kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him:** Jesus will be coming as their judge, but notice that even though it is a dreadful time, John says, Even so, Amen.

**8 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending,**

**saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty.**

**I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending:** Jesus is stating that he is the first, and the last, and that he is the Almighty.

Jesus is both fully man, and fully God, the Godman. Isaiah 44:6, 48:12, Revelation 1:17, 2:8 & 22:13.

**Which is, and which was, and which is to come:** Jesus Christ has always been the Almighty.

He was God at the time this was written by John, he was God while he walked this earth, and before his incarnation, and he will be God when he returns. He has never ceased being God.

**The Almighty:** Another title for God. Genesis 17:1 & Revelation 21:22.

**9 I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ.**

**I John, who also am your brother:** He was their Jewish brother, and a fellow believer in Jesus.

**And companion in tribulation:** John identified himself as a companion to the Jewish remnant that will be going through the tribulation period, where the gospel of the kingdom will once again be preached. Matthew 24:14.

Some believe he will prophesy again in the tribulation period the things mentioned by the seven thunders that he was told to seal up until that time. Daniel 9:24, 12:4 & Revelation 10:4.

**The kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ:** Luke 8:15, 21:19, Hebrews 6:13, 10:36, 12:1, James 1:3-4, 5:7-11, Revelation 2:2, 3, 19, 3:10, 13:10 & 14:12.

The patience of Jesus Christ is speaking about believers enduring unto the end of the tribulation period to enter their kingdom.

**Was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God:** Nowhere does it say John was imprisoned on the Island for his faith, he went there to receive the word of God.

**For the testimony of Jesus Christ:** Revelation 1:2 above. The testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

*Revelation 19:10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.*

**10 I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet,**

**I was in the Spirit:** John was receiving supernatural revelations by the power of the holy Spirit of God. Ezekiel 37:1, Revelation 4:2, 17:3 & 21:10.

John had to be caught up to heaven in the Spirit because his sinful body could not stand in the presence of God without being destroyed. The word Spirit is capitalized, thus denoting that it was by the holy Spirit that he was seeing this vision.

**On the Lord's day:** This is the only time in the Bible the Lord's day is ever mentioned, and it is a reference to the time period known as "the day of the Lord" used twenty-seven times in the old testament. Isaiah 2:12.

This day is both a literal twenty-four-hour day at the end of the tribulation period, and the time period of seven years when God is judging the earth.

John sees things that will happen thousands of years ahead of his time, and retells what has already seen. At other times he tells what will happen, as though it was a live event happening right before his eyes.

**A great voice, as of a trumpet:** Exodus 19:16, 19, Hebrews 12:19 & Revelation 4:1.

**11 Saying,**

**I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last:  
and, What thou seest, write in a book, and send it  
unto the seven churches which are in Asia;  
unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto  
Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis,  
and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea.**

**I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last:** Alpha is the first letter in the Greek alphabet, and Omega is the last one.

**What thou seest, write in a book:** John saw the events of chapters four through twenty-two unfold before him in a vision, and he wrote what he saw, which makes up most of the book of the Revelation.

The Greek word for book is "biblion" which means literally, a scroll. It is where we get the word "Bible" from.

He did not see what was written in Revelation chapters two and three happen, he was just told to write to the angels of these seven different churches in Asia telling them that God had seen what they were doing.

**Send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia:** Why are these churches in Asia (modern-day Turkey)? Believers will once again be scattered there from Israel just as they were in John's day.

These will be new churches as all true believers will have gone up in the rapture. They will be started by Jews that believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God at the beginning of the tribulation period. They will be Jewish kingdom churches.

The doctrine in chapters two and three agree with Israel's kingdom church, not with the doctrine of the churches that were started by Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles. Romans 11:13.

These letters are cyclical letters, which are to be read, and obeyed by all the other churches during the tribulation period.

**12 And I turned to see the voice that spake with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks;**

**The voice that spake with me:** The great voice from v:10.

**Seven golden candlesticks:** These are the seven churches first mentioned in verse eleven. The candlesticks were not speaking, Christ was speaking in their midst. Revelation 1:20 below.

**13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.**

**One like unto the Son of man:** John saw him as a Lamb during his earthly ministry, and now he was seeing him in his heavenly role.

The Son of man is a title meaning a son of Adam, but this verse says John saw one "like unto" the Son of man. Jesus was a descendant of Adam, and the Son of God. Daniel 7:13.

**Clothed with a garment down to the foot:** Which was white as snow according to Daniel 7:9.

**Girt about the paps with a golden girdle:** The breast area. Luke 11:27.

**14 His head and his hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and his eyes were as a flame of fire;**

**His hairs were white like wool, as white as snow:** This is also used to describe the Ancient of days:

*Daniel 7:9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire.*

The thrones being cast down are the fallen angels being cast down to the earth at the mid-point of the tribulation period. Luke 10:17-19.

**His eyes were as a flame of fire:** Revelation 2:18 & 19:12. The Son of God appeared as the Angel of the LORD in a flame of fire. Exodus 3:2, Acts 7:30 & Hebrews 1:7.

**15 And his feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and his voice as the sound of many waters.**

**His feet like unto fine brass:** Brass is symbolic of judgment. Revelation 2:18.

**His voice as the sound of many waters:** Psalm 29:3, Ezekiel 43:2, Revelation 14:2 & 19:6.

**16 And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went a sharp twoedged sword: and his countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength.**

**In his right hand:** The hand that a person bestows honour with. Genesis 48:13-18.

**Seven stars:** They are the angels (messengers) over the seven churches. Revelation 1:20.

**A sharp two-edged sword:** The word of God. Hebrews 4:12.

**His countenance was as the sun shineth:** This can be seen in the story on the mount of transfiguration in Luke 9:29.

**17 And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me,**

**Fear not; I am the first and the last:**

**When I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead:** Matthew 28: 4 & John 18:5-6.

**I am the first and the last:** John is then comforted by Christ as he tells him not to fear, because the one he ministered with for three and a half years is the first and the last, a title reserved only for God himself. Isaiah 44:6.

**18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and, behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.**

**I am he that liveth:** Present tense.

**And was dead:** Jesus was dead physically three days, beginning at his crucifixion, but he was alive in the heart of the earth (paradise). Mark 15:37-47 & Luke 23:43.

**And, behold, I am alive for evermore:** Which began at his resurrection. Mark 16:1-9 & Revelation 2:8.

**The keys of hell and of death:** Both death and hell will be cast into the lake of fire at the last day. Hell is the abode of the dead.

David's soul went to hell (the abode of the dead), but he was in the Paradise side, also known as Abraham's bosom, not in the torment side, while he was awaiting the resurrection: Revelation 20:13-14.

*Psalm 16:10 For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.*

There is a key to this pit mentioned in Revelation 9:1, & 20:1, which is in the heart of the earth as well.

**19 Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter;**

**The things which thou hast seen:** These are the events happening during the seven-year tribulation period. Revelation 4:4.

John writes absolutely nothing about anything prior to his vision because they are recorded already in his other epistles, so this comment refers to events that he has seen already in his vision during the seven years.

**The things which are:** The things that are occurring on the day of the Lord when he returns. The last day of the last days. A.K.A The day of the Lord.

**The things which shall be hereafter:** The things that shall be happening during the millennial kingdom and beyond. Revelation 4:1.

That means that John was taken to a point in time in the future, and then he is allowed to see things that had already happened, and things that were happening on that day, and things that would happen after that day.

**20 The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks. The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.**

**The seven stars:** The angels of the seven churches. The angels are the messengers of these churches.

**In my right hand:** This is a position of honour for faithful service. The seven sealed book is mentioned as being in God's right hand in Revelation 5:1 & 7.

**The seven golden candlesticks:** These are the seven churches in verse 20. Again, the seven churches do not represent seven church ages, they are literal churches.

## Chapter Two

### The Seven Churches

These seven letters are written to the angels of the seven churches. The term Angel in the Bible means a messenger.

During the time of Jacob's trouble (the tribulation period) angels will once again begin to deliver messages to believing Jews to help them in their time of great need, this is not happening today in the dispensation of grace.

**1 Unto the angel of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks;**

**The angel of the church of Ephesus:** John writes to the Angel/messenger of this future church in Ephesus. Ephesus is the closest city to the Island of Patmos of all seven of these churches.

This is not the same group that Paul writes to in Ephesians much later. John writes to future kingdom saints, while Paul writes to the body of Christ. The word Angel is transliterated from the Greek word Aggelos, a messenger.

It is not written to the Pastor of the church, as this angel is also identified as the first angel in Revelation 8:7 that sounds his trumpet, and that later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8.

The Greek never supports the word Angel being translated as a Pastor.

**He that holdeth the seven stars in his right hand:** Jesus Christ holds these seven angels in his right hand. This is a position of honour and blessing. Genesis 48:13-18.

Jesus Christ is the right hand of God, and he holds these messengers to these tribulation churches in his right hand. Revelation 1:20.

**Who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks:** Jesus literally walks in the midst of the seven candlesticks in heaven, which represent seven literal churches in Asia. Revelation 1:20.

He says this to let the recipients of this letter know that he will be there for them in this terrible time.

**2 I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not bear them which are evil: and thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not, and hast found them liars:**

**Thy works:** The deeds they are doing.

**Thy labour:** Their labour has to do with their struggles that they are enduring.

**Thy patience:** This has to do with their patiently enduring unto the end. Matthew 24:13, Revelation 1:9, 2:19, 3:10, 13:10 & 14:12.

**Thou canst not bear them which are evil:** They don't put up with false teachers that come their way.

**Thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not:** An apostle means a sent one.

They will be able to test who is a true apostle in that day, by seeing if they can do what Jesus sent his apostles to do 2,000 years ago. If they will not confess that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh, then they are not apostles.

A real apostle in those days will go and preach the gospel of the kingdom in all the world. They will heal all manner of sickness, and disease among the people, just as Jesus sent the apostles to do: Matthew 24:14 & 28:19-20.

*Matthew 4:23 And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people.*

**3 And hast borne, and hast patience, and for my name's sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted.**

**Hast borne:** Carried. Matthew 20:12 & John 20:15.

**Hast patience:** Revelation 1:9, 3:10, 13:10 & 14:12.

**Hast laboured:** The struggles they have endured.

**Hast not fainted:** They were enduring unto the end.

**4 Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love.**

This is synonymous with the first commandment. Deuteronomy 6:5 & Mark 12:30.

*Mark 12:30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this is the first commandment.*

**5 Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent.**

**Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works:** This implies that their repentance should be quick as well.

**I will come unto thee quickly:** This is said only six times in scripture, and each time it is to the seven churches in the book of the Revelation. 2:16, 3:11, 22:7, 12 & 20.

**And will remove thy candlestick from out of his place:** The candlestick represents the church of Ephesus that will be removed out of his place, in the midst of the throne of God, if it doesn't repent and do the first work.

God is saying to these tribulation churches, "You are in my midst at the present time, but I will remove you out of your place in my midst if you don't repent of leaving me." If that happens, they will not enter into their kingdom.

**6 But this thou hast, that thou hatest the deeds of the Nicolaitanes, which I also hate.**

**The deeds of the Nicolaitanes:** This is the elevation of the clergy over the laity. The word "nico" means to rule, while the word "laitane" means the laity.

**7 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.**

**He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches:** This statement is made to each of the seven churches.

Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

**To him that overcometh:** This phrase is only used of the apostle John in the scripture. The overcomers are the ones which endure unto the end of the tribulation. Matthew 24:13.

An overcomer is someone who believes that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God in those days. 1st John 5:4-5:

*1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him. 2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep his commandments. 3 For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous. 4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith. 5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God?*

*Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.*

**The tree of life:** This tree gives the overcomers eternal life in the kingdom when they partake of it.

Those who believe during the tribulation period will not be sealed by the holy Spirit as we are today in the dispensation of grace, so, they will need to partake of this tree. 1st Corinthians 12:13.

**Which is in the midst of the paradise of God:** In Luke 23:43 Jesus tells a thief on the cross that he will join him in paradise on that same day, which was in the heart of the earth, a.k.a. Abraham's bosom.

Later, Paul speaks about John's being caught up into paradise in 2nd Corinthians 12:4. Which places paradise in heaven sometime after the resurrection. Ephesians 4:8-10.

#### The Church in Smyrna

**8 And unto the angel of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;**

**The angel of the church in Smyrna:** This letter is not written to the pastor of the church. This angel is also called the second angel in Revelation 8:8 that sounds his trumpet, and that later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8.

**The first and the last:** This is a title for God used in Isaiah 44:6, 48:12, Revelation 1:8, 17 & 22:13.

**Which was dead, and is alive:** This is a description of the man Christ Jesus, who died in front of John on the cross, and is alive today because he rose from the dead.

This verse connects the first, and the last, with the one who was dead, but now is alive. They are the same. Jesus is God in the flesh.

**9 I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty, (but thou art rich) and I know the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan.**

**Thy works:** The deeds they are doing.

**Tribulation:** The word comes from the same Greek root word for trouble. The time of Jacob's "trouble" is called the great "tribulation." Jeremiah 30:7 and Revelation 2:22 & 7:14.

**Poverty:** They were poor in man's eyes, but rich in God's.

**The blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not:** Who is a Jew in God's eyes? A Jew is first a descendant of Abraham, and then they must also be circumcised in their heart. That means that only believing Israel are real Jews in the tribulation period.

The unbelieving "Jews" who are physical descendants of Abraham, but not spiritual descendants during the tribulation period, are the ones committing this blasphemy.

**The synagogue of Satan:** These "Jews" go to worship at a synagogue, which God calls the synagogue of Satan, because those that are in it reject Jesus Christ whom Moses spoke of.

They can be a descendant of Abraham, and still not be a Jew in God's eyes, if they do not believe in God the Father, and his Son.

*1st John 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. 12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.*

**10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.**

**That ye may be tried:** The tribulation period is referred to as a fiery furnace used to refine his servants. Daniel 3:1-30.

*Isaiah 48:10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.*

*Revelation 3:18 I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*

**Ye shall have tribulation ten days:** They will have ten days to change their mind and take the mark of the beast or else they will be beheaded for their faith as enemies of the one world government. Daniel 1:12-14.

**Be thou faithful unto death:** Endure unto the end. Matthew 24:13.

**A crown of life:** Eternal life in the kingdom.

*James 1:12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.*

**11 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death.**

**He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches:** This statement is made to each of the seven churches.

Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13. It is also used of

Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

**He that overcometh:** This phrase is used in each of the seven letters to the seven churches in Asia. An overcomer is defined for us in 1st John 5:4-5 as someone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God.

*Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.*

**The second death:** Revelation 20:6 & 21:8.

*Revelation 20:14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.*

#### The Church in Pergamos

**12 And to the angel of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which hath the sharp sword with two edges; 13 I know thy works, and where thou dwellest, even where Satan's seat is: and thou holdest fast my name, and hast not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas was my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth.**

**The angel of the church in Pergamos:** This angel is identified as the third angel in Revelation 8:10 that sounds his trumpet, that later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8.

**The sharp sword with two edges:** This is the word of God.

**Thy works:** The deeds they are doing.

**Antipas was my faithful martyr:** Antipas is a future martyr in the tribulation period. Antipas was actually a popular name in those days. Agrippa's uncle was Herod, whose full name was Herod Antipas.

**Satan's seat:** This seat is where Satan will dwell during the last three and a half years of the tribulation period.

Satan himself will have his seat of authority in actual Pergamos, but his eyes are on the prize of Jerusalem where the Antichrist will be.

**14 But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols, and to commit fornication.**

**The doctrine of Balaam:** Doctrine has to do with teaching.

Just as Balaam taught Balak to cast a stumbling block before Israel, so will some in Pergamos be doing to these tribulation saints. Numbers 22-24 & 31:16.

**To eat things sacrificed unto idols:** While everything is to be accepted today in the dispensation of grace if it is received by thanksgiving, it was not so in Israel's program in the past, nor will it be okay in the tribulation period. 1st Timothy 4:3 and 4.

**To commit fornication:** The word fornication comes from the Greek word *Porneo*. This could be referring to spiritual adultery. Idol worship.

**15 So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitanes, which thing I hate.**



**The doctrine of the Nicolaitanes:** This is a separation in the classes of believers. They have religious leaders who hold the laity in bondage, dependent upon them for their distorted versions of salvation.

**16 Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will fight against them with the sword of my mouth.**

**Thee:** The “thee” is the church as a whole. God spares the wheat (believers in Pergamos).

**Them:** The them are the ones that Christ will actually fight against with the sword of his mouth, who he burns up the chaff (the unbelievers) with unquenchable fire.

**The sword of my mouth:** The word of God, which is a twoedged sword. Revelation 1:16, 19:15 and 19:21.

**17 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.**

**He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches:** This statement is made to each of the seven churches. Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

**To him that overcometh:** An overcomer is described in 1st John 5:4-5, as someone who believes that Jesus is the Son of God in those last days.

*Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.*

**The hidden manna:** This is Christ himself, who for the time being is in exile in heaven, hidden from view.

He will supernaturally provide bread in the wilderness for three and a half years during the latter half of the tribulation period to the remnant. He is the manna that came down from heaven. John 6:35.

**A white stone:** This is Jesus as well, for he was the stone that was rejected and set at naught by the builders and is become the chief of the corner.

**A new name:** A new name of God is written in the stone, and not on the stone. Isaiah 62:2 & Revelation 3:12.

#### The church in Thyatira

**18 And unto the angel of the church in Thyatira write; These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass;**

**The angel of the church in Thyatira:** This is not the Pastor of the church.

This is the fourth angel mentioned in Revelation 8:12 that blows the fourth trumpet, and he is also one of the seven angels that pour out the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8. Pastors do not have these abilities.

**His eyes like unto a flame of fire:** Exodus 3:2, Acts 7:30, Hebrews 1:7, Revelation 1:14 & 19:12.

**His feet are like fine brass:** Revelation 1:15.

**19 I know thy works, and charity, and service, and faith, and thy patience, and thy works; and the last to be more than the first.**

**Thy works:** The deeds they are doing.

**Charity:** This is from the root word Agape in the Greek. A deep abiding love. Translated as love numerous times. John 21:15-17.

**Service:** Their ministry. It is from the same word that we get the word Deacon from. 1st Timothy 3:10 & 13.

**Faith:** What they believe.

**Thy patience:** Revelation 1:9, 2:2-3, 3:10, 13:10 & 14:12.

**Thy works; and the last to be more than the first.** The new works that they were doing later on were more than the works that they were doing in the beginning.

**20 Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols.**

**That woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess:** Notice that she does the same thing as Balaam did in Pergamos, in causing Israel to sin. She also is a self-proclaimed prophetess.

**To teach and seduce my servants:** Whoever Jezebel is, the church there should not allow her to teach God’s servants. What she is teaching is seducing them away from what is required of them in that day and time.

At that time, the middle wall of partition will be back up between Israel and the Gentiles, and Israel will not be allowed to eat things sacrificed unto idols. Ephesians 2:14.

They will not be under the dispensation of grace then, but under the law of Moses.

**My servants:** These are the believing Jews identified in Revelation 1:1.

**To commit fornication:** The word fornication comes from the Greek word Porneuo.

**To eat things sacrificed unto idols:** Everything is to be accepted today in the dispensation of grace if it is received by thanksgiving, that was not so in Israel’s program, nor will it be okay in the tribulation period. 1st Timothy 4:3-4.

**21 And I gave her space to repent of her fornication; and she repented not. 22 Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of their deeds.**

**I gave her space to repent of her fornication:** God will send 144,000 missionaries out into the world to warn this false church, and its inhabitants, of the spiritual adultery she is committing against God, but she will not repent.

**I will cast her into a bed:** Those that remain inside this after they are warned for a space of time to repent and do not, they will go

into the great tribulation period which happens in the second half of the tribulation period. Ezekiel 32:25.

**Them that commit adultery with her:** This is not speaking of a literal woman in bed with a bunch of men, but a religious system, like Baal worship disguised in a global church, that entices his servants to commit spiritual adultery.

**Great tribulation:** Those that come out of this harlot church will be protected in the wilderness for three-and-one-half years.

God will send the lost strong delusion and they will believe a lie, but those that have heard the truth will need to purge these false believers out of their tribulation churches. Matthew 24:21 & 7:14.

**23 And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.**

**I will kill her children with death:** They are the little harlots spoken of in Revelation eighteen called: Mystery, Babylon the great, the mother of harlots, that have broken from the mother church.

They infiltrate this church as Jezebel did, but God here warns them to watch out for this during their short seven-year existence. Revelation 6:8.

**I will give unto every one of you according to your works:** Rewards and punishments are meted out based on a person's work, of what sort it is. This is not dealing with salvation, but rewards.

**24 But unto you I say, and unto the rest in Thyatira, as many as have not this doctrine, and which have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak; I will put upon you none other burden. 25 But that which ye have already hold fast till I come.**

**The depths of Satan:** Those who have been deceived by Satan's prophetess (Jezebel), have sunk as low as is humanly possible.

Those who have not taken Satan's mark yet are encouraged to hold fast until Christ comes back at the end of the seven-year tribulation period.

**Hold fast till I come:** Endure unto the end. Matthew 24:13, Hebrews 3:6, 4:14, 10:23, Revelation 3:3 & 11.

**26 And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations:**

**He that overcometh:** This phrase is used in each of the seven letters to the seven churches in Asia. An overcomer is defined for us in 1st John 5:4-5 as someone who believes that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God.

**Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.**

**And keepeth my works unto the end:** This is the key issue concerning works in the tribulation period, they need to be his works, not just being busy in a religious exercise that makes you feel good in the flesh.

They need to work the works of Christ, not religion.

**To him will I give power over the nations:** Those believers in the tribulation period who keep Christ's works unto the end of that time will rule the nations with Christ, with a rod of iron.

**27 And he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers: even as I received of my Father.**

**He shall rule them with a rod of iron:** The "them" are the Gentile nations that will be ruled over by the believing children of Israel during the kingdom.

The man child in Revelation 12:5 is said to rule with a rod of iron in the kingdom as well.

**28 And I will give him the morning star.**

**The morning star:** This is Jesus Christ, who is the Sun of Righteousness. Those who keep his works unto the end of the tribulation period get to rule with Jesus with a rod of iron. Numbers 24:17, 2nd Peter 1:19 & Revelation 22:16.

**29 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.**

This statement is made to each of the seven churches. Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

### Chapter Three

#### The church in Sardis

**1 And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write; These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars; I know thy works, that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead.**

**The angel of the church in Sardis:** This angel is identified as the fifth angel in Revelation 9:1, that sounds his trumpet, and who later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8.

**The seven Spirits of God:** The seven lamps which stand in the presence of God. Revelation 4:5 & Isaiah 11:1-2.

**The seven stars:** These are the seven angels (messengers) of the seven churches of Asia. A church that is alive according to the world, is dead to God. Revelation 1:20.

**Thy works:** The deeds they are doing. These works are religious works, but they only satisfy their flesh, God is not accepting their works, but the world loves them.

**Thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead:** Alive according to the world, but dead to God.

**2 Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die: for I have not found thy works perfect before God.**

**Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die:** They are to be looking for his return. They will need to strengthen the works they were doing instead of stopping them because of the fear of persecution.

**I have not found thy works perfect before God:** They need to work the works that Christ worked while he ministered to Israel.

Sell all that they have, visit the sick, the widow, the orphans, feed the poor. The word “perfect” here means complete.

**3 Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent. If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee.**

**How thou hast received and heard:** They received this letter by God sending his angel to deliver it to them (his servants). Revelation 1:1.

**Hold fast:** Which means to endure unto the end. Hebrews 3:6, 4:14, 10:23, Revelation 2:25 & 3:11.

**Repent:** To change one’s mind about something, which causes a change of action.

**If therefore thou shalt not watch:** They were not to forget what they had learned before, and they were to go back to what it was that they had learned and were doing.

**I will come on thee as a thief:** This passage, and the ones surrounding Matthew 24:43 are referring to a rapture to judgment that occurs at the end of the tribulation period.

**Thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee:** If they are watching these events, they can know the year, month, and the week, but no one will know the day, nor the hour of his return, not the rapture. Matthew 24:36-44.

**4 Thou hast a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy.**

**Thou hast a few names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments:** Their garments (spiritually speaking) are defiled by taking the mark of the beast.

**They shall walk with me in white:** This is speaking about the remnant (a few names) of end time saints as being undefiled. Daniel 12:10, Revelation 6:11, & 7:9.

**5 He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.**

**He that overcometh:** This phrase is used in each of the seven letters to the seven churches in Asia. An overcomer is defined for us in 1st John 5:4-5 as someone who believes that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God.

**Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.**

**Clothed in white raiment:** White is symbolic of God’s righteousness. Daniel 12:10 & Revelation 3:18.

**I will not blot out his name out of the book of life:** Believers in the tribulation period are not sealed by the holy Spirit and must be overcomers, or else their names will be blotted out of the book of life.

Their names are placed there when they believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God, but it can be blotted out because they are not under grace as we are today.

Today, in the body of Christ, we are sealed unto the day of redemption. Ephesians 4:30.

The holy Spirit did not take up permanent residence in the believer during the old testament time period, neither will He during the tribulation period. The tribulation saint will have to overcome the temptation to take the mark.

During the last three and one-half years, sin will abound, but grace will much more abound, and God will return signs and wonders to God’s spokesmen during that age.

No one in the dispensation of grace today has to worry about having their name blotted out of the book of life, because this refers to those in the tribulation period.

**I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels:** *Luke 12:8.*

**6 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.**

This statement is made to each of the seven churches. Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

#### The church in Philadelphia

**7 And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth;**

**The angel of the church in Philadelphia:** This angel is also identified as the third angel in Revelation 9:13-14, that sounds his trumpet, and that later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 15:6-8.

**The key of David:** This is a reference to opening the door of salvation by believing the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 24:14.

**Isaiah 22:22 And the key of the house of David will I lay upon his shoulder; so he shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open.**

**8 I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name.**

**I know thy works:** The deeds that they do.

**An open door:** Here Christ is contrasted with the key of David, and an open door.

This door would remain open because of their faithfulness in not taking the mark of the beast, even under the threat of death. Jesus said that he was the door that Israel must enter through to be saved in John 10:9.

**9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.**

**The synagogue of Satan:** God says that those who steal the promises that belong to Israel and apply them to themselves, that he will make them “of” the synagogue of Satan.

Those that will be a part of the synagogue of Satan will come and worship (Christ) before the feet of those that did not bow to Satan’s temptation by taking his mark.

They will worship next to the real Jews who are circumcised in their hearts because they believe Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. Revelation 2:9.

**I will make them to come and worship before thy feet:** They will worship God before their feet, not at their feet.

**10 Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.**

**The word of my patience:** Revelation 1:9, 2:2-3, 13:10 & 14:12.

**I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation:** This speaks of God’s protection of these tribulation saints in the wilderness, and it should not be confused with the pre-tribulation rapture of the church.

The church is the body of Christ, and it will not go through the tribulation period, but there will be churches formed during the tribulation period by the 144,000.

After the midpoint of the tribulation period the world will have to receive the mark of the beast to pledge their loyalty to the one world system, and this will be done during the ten days mentioned in Revelation 2:10.

**11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.**

**Hold fast that which thou hast:** Endure unto the end. Hebrews 3:6, 4:14, 10:23, Revelation 2:25 & 3:11.

**That no man take thy crown:** Those who hold fast in the tribulation period, will receive a crown of life. Revelation 1:10. This crown can be taken away from someone during that time if they give in to the temptation to take the mark of the beast.

**12 Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name.**

**Him that overcometh:** An overcomer is someone who believes that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God in those last days. 1st John 5:4-5.

*Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.*

**A pillar in the temple of my God:** An important worker in the temple during the millennial kingdom.

**The name of my God:** Revelation 14:1.

**The name of the city of my God:** Which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven. Verse 12 & Revelation 21:2.

**My new name:** The word of God. Revelation 2:17 & 19:13.

**13 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.**

**He that hath an ear:** This statement is made to the seven churches, and about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower. Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples. Everyone has an ear, but all do not listen, or understand spiritual things.

#### The church of the Laodiceans

**14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God; 15 I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. 16 So then because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth.**

**The angel of the church of the Laodiceans:** This angel is identified as the seventh angel in Revelation 10:7 & 11:17 that sounds his trumpet, and that later pours out a golden vial of the wrath of God in Revelation 16:17. Pastors cannot do these things.

**The Amen:** Jesus, as God is the Amen. Amen means the Word of God. Jesus is God.

**The faithful and true witness:** Jesus as a man was the faithful and true witness unto the end. Revelation 19:11 & 22:16.

**The beginning of the creation of God:** Jesus Christ created all things, which makes him God. Mark 10:6 & 13:19.

**I know thy works:** The deeds they are doing.

**I will spue thee out of my mouth:** God will spew the lukewarm church out of his mouth in those days. During the tribulation period churches must be like their Saviour, who was a faithful and true witness, or else they will be rejected.

**17 Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked:**

There will be churches that just keep right on going after the rapture because most of their membership was not saved to start with. New believers will join them, and they will be faced with a dilemma to leave it, or to stay and compromise.

**18 I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.**

**Buy of me gold tried in the fire:** This speaks of the persecution and adversity found in the tribulation period. Zechariah 13:6-9 & 1st Peter 1:1-7.

*Zechariah 13:7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the LORD of hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered: and I will turn mine hand upon the little ones. 8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the LORD, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein. 9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call*

*on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God.*

**White raiment:** Is received by enduring temptations in the time of Jacob's trouble. Daniel 12:10 & Revelation 3:5.

**Anoint thy eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see:** Eyesalve is another word for medicine.

Regular medicine will not give someone spiritual eyes to see the truth of God's word. Jesus asked his disciples when they saw him do miracles why they did not believe his word.

They had forgotten his works. Those that see many marvelous works, do not connect them to his word, and they will be blind to what is going on. Mark 8:14-21.

**19 As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent.**

**Rebuke:** To tell someone their fault.

**Chasten:** To discipline.

**Be zealous therefore, and repent:** God loves these tribulation churches, and he warns them to be zealous in their testimony of him at that time before it is too late.

He also shows his love by rebuking, and chastening them, just like a loving parent does a wayward child.

**Repent:** To change one's mind. God repented, by changing his mind. Exodus 32:1 4 & Numbers 23:19.

**20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.**

**I stand at the door:** Jesus is standing outside the door of this tribulation church wanting to fellowship with its members, but because they will not collectively repent, he fellowships with the individuals in it that will.

*Isaiah 3:13 The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.* Acts 7:56.

They better take heed while the Lord is standing up and pleading for Israel, because the next time he stands it will be to judge the people of Israel. Luke 12:35-38.

Remember what happened when Stephen's preaching was rejected, God gave him a vision of Jesus standing at the right hand of God in Acts 7:54-60 ready to judge Israel in wrath.

**21 To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne.**

**To him that overcometh:** An overcomer is someone who believes that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God in those last days. 1st John 5:4-5.

*Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.*

**My throne:** The promise to sit with Christ in his throne is not given to those individuals who overcome the persecution that comes to them as they are pressured to be a lukewarm church.

The overcomers in the tribulation period will rule and reign with Christ for a thousand years, who is the King of kings. Revelation 20:4-6.

**His throne:** This is throne of God the Father.

**22 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.**

This statement is made to each of the seven churches. Jesus also said it about John the Baptist in Matthew 11:15, and twice in the parable of the sower in Matthew 13.

It is also used of Jesus about what defiles a man in Mark 7:16, and in Luke 14:33-35 concerning people forsaking all to be his disciples.

#### Chapter Four

##### A door was opened in heaven

**1 After this I looked, and behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said,**

**Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter.**

**A door was opened in heaven:** This also happens one other time in the Revelation 19:11 when Christ returns to earth riding on a white horse.

Two other times the scriptures say that the temple of God in heaven is open, but not heaven itself. Revelation 11:19 & 15:5.

**The first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet:** John heard an audible voice here (as it were of a trumpet), he did not hear an actual trumpet.

In 1st Corinthians 15:52 Paul says that when the rapture occurs that it will be at the last trump, for the trumpet shall sound, this is an actual trumpet, not a voice, so these are not the same event. 1st Thessalonians 4:13-18.

**Come up hither:** The word hither means here. This is not the rapture of the body of Christ as many teach today!

In the rapture God does not call us up to heaven to meet him there, as he does with John here. In the rapture the Lord descends from heaven first, and then he calls us up to meet him in the clouds. Similar, yet quite different.

John is already in the Spirit on the Lord's day, which is the day of the LORD spoken of all throughout the old testament. John talks about events that happen in Revelation 19 with the four and twenty elders.

You cannot separate these two chapters from one another, they are talking about the same events. You must study chapter nineteen along with this chapter for a better understanding of that future day.

This three-word phrase is only used one other time in the scriptures, and it is not used in Paul's epistles to the body of Christ, but to Elijah and Moses in Revelation 11:12. Both times it is used for Jews under Israel's law.

But more importantly, the rapture is for the body of Christ, not for Israel. John was an apostle to Israel. He was not a member of the body of Christ. Israel has a date with the 70th week of Daniel.

**The things which must be hereafter:** This is the second reference to the threefold statement made in Revelation 1:19 that outlines the book of the Revelation of Jesus Christ.

John was caught up to heaven in the spirit (spiritually) to see the things that will happen during the tribulation period while the body of Christ is safe in heaven with the Lord.

**2 And immediately I was in the spirit: and behold, a throne was set in heaven, and one sat on the throne.**

**3 And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and there was a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald.**

**I was in the spirit:** This is usually a reference to the Holy Spirit carrying someone to another place. Ezekiel 37:1, Revelation 1:10, 17:3 & 21:10.

**Like jasper and a sardine stone:** These three verses correspond with Revelation 19:4-5.

**There was a rainbow round about the throne:** A rainbow is formed by reflecting the light around it.

The radiance of God's glorious light reflects in a twelve-colored rainbow. Here in this verse, we see three of the colors that emanate from God that are like unto Jasper, Sardine, and Emerald stones.

**In sight like unto an emerald:** The rainbow itself looked like an emerald.

**4 And round about the throne were four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold.**

**Four and twenty seats:** The word "seat" is the Greek word "Thronos" where we get the word thrones from.

**Four and twenty elders:** They are not representatives of the church, which is Christ's body. They could be elders from each of the twelve tribes of Israel. Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, 19:4.

They could possibly be two from each tribe that were a part of the 144,000 witnesses serving as representatives for their tribe, or the leaders of the twenty-four courses of priests that were set up by king David in 1st Chronicles 24.

**Clothed in white raiment:** Daniel 12:10 & Revelation 3:5 & 18.

*Revelation 19:7 The marriage of the Lamb comes, and his wife hath made herself ready. 8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of the saints.*

**They had on their heads crowns of gold:** The four and twenty elders are representatives that are from, or a part of, the Lamb's wife, who hath made herself ready and were given fine linen, clean and white.

The Lamb's wife were members of the churches during the tribulation period who received crowns.

The elders received crowns as well because they are from the same group of end time believers that make up the Lamb's wife. They are not members of the church, which is Christ's body.

**5 And out of the throne proceeded lightnings and thunderings and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God.**

**Lightnings and thunderings and voices:** This is one of five times these three things are mentioned together in a verse. The other times are Revelation 8:5, 11:19 & 16:18. Exodus 19:16.

**Seven lamps of fire burning before the throne:** They are mentioned in Revelation 1:4 without any clue as to who they are, until now, they are the seven Spirits of God.

These are not the seven golden candlesticks in Revelation 1:12. They are also called the seven eyes in Revelation 5:6.

**6 And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind.**

**A sea of glass like unto crystal:** This sea of glass is mentioned again in Revelation 15:2-4 where those who had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stood singing the song of Moses. The sea looks like crystal.

**Four beasts full of eyes before and behind:** These beasts are not the Cherubim mentioned in Ezekiel 10. There are four beasts mentioned here each having only one face, while a Cherub is one beast with four faces.

Lucifer was the most powerful of them all, but he lost his place as the anointed cherub that covered the throne when sin was found in him. Ezekiel 28:12-19.

Cherub is singular in Hebrew, while Cherubim is plural. The suffix "im" at the end of a Hebrew word always makes it plural.

Elohim means that the God who is one, is "im" plural. A triune being. The one rule in the biblical Hebrew language is that Hebrew rules never change.

**7 And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle.**

These four separate beasts possibly represent the four different views of the Messiah that Israel saw in the four gospels:

**The first beast was like a lion:** In the gospel of Matthew, Jesus is the Lion of the Tribe of Judah.

**The second beast was like a calf:** Also called the face of a cherub in Ezekiel 10:14. The gospel of Mark depicts Jesus as a servant.

Cows were used to pull plows as beasts of burdens. This sheds a little light on Genesis 3:14 where the serpent was cursed by God above all cattle (a calf).

**The third beast had a face as a man:** The gospel of Luke depicts Jesus as the Son of Man.

**The fourth beast was like a flying eagle:** The gospel of John depicts Jesus as God above.

When comparing the order of Ezekiel 10:14 and Revelation 4:7 the order does not line up because these are the four beasts each with one face each.

In Ezekiel 10:14 there is a description of only one beast with four heads. These are most likely the seraphims mentioned in Isaiah 6:1-3.

**8 And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying,**

**Holy, holy, holy, LORD God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come.**

**Six wings about him:** There were three pairs of wings, each with a specific purpose:

*Isaiah 6:1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. 2 Above it stood the seraphims: each one had six wings;*

*with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. 3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.*

**9 And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, 10 The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying,**

**11 Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.**

**The four and twenty elders:** Each had received crowns for their faithfulness through the tribulation period. Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

**Cast their crowns before the throne:** *Revelation 4:4.*

## Chapter Five

### A seven sealed book

**1 And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals.**

**In the right hand of him:** This phrase is used to denote a position of honor and power given to one for their loyalty. Genesis 48:14. The seven stars/angels are also said to be held in God's right hand. Revelation 1:20.

**A book written within and on the backside:** This was a scroll that had words written on the backside of the scroll, and in it.

**Sealed with seven seals:** The seals are opened one after the other in chapter six.

Each seal was a different seal, which was allowed to be opened only by the one with authority from the author to open that particular seal. In Daniel 12:4 Daniel is told to "shut up the words and to seal the book." Isaiah 29:11.

**2 And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice,**

**Who is worthy to open the book, and to lose the seals thereof?**

**3 And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon.**

**A strong angel:** This was most likely Michael.

**Who is worthy to open the book:** No one is worthy to open the book because of their sin. Not David, or Daniel, not John the Baptist, not Peter, or Mary was worthy to open the book.

No saint today in the dispensation of grace, or any law-abiding Jew of the past, or future could open this book because all are sinners.

**To lose the seals thereof:** The seals are those of a king. 1st Kings 21:8 & Esther 8:8. Daniel chapter twelve tells us about a book that is sealed until the time of the end, and also of a strong angel.

*Daniel 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. 2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. 3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever. 4 But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased. 5 Then I Daniel looked, and behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river. 6 And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, How long shall it be to the end of these wonders? 7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished. 8 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. 10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand. 11 And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days. 12 Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days. 13 But go thou thy way till the end be: for thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.*

**4 And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon. 5 And one of the elders saith unto me,**

**Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to lose the seven seals thereof.**

**The Lion of the tribe of Judah:** See the prophecy of Jacob to his sons.

*Genesis 49:8 Judah, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise: thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies; thy father's children shall bow down before thee. 9 Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey, my son, thou art gone up: he stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up? 10 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be.*

**The Root of David:** The offspring of David. Revelation 22:16.

**6 And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim in Isaiah 6:1-3.

**The elders:** The four and twenty elders.

**A Lamb as it had been slain:** He was introduced as a Lion, but when John turned to see him, he saw a Lamb with seven horns and seven eyes.

**Seven horns:** The horns represent the seven world rulers that the Lamb defeated by his death on the cross.

**Seven eyes:** These eyes are **the seven Spirits of God** which are described as the seven lamps which are before his throne. Revelation 1:4 & 4:5.

These lamps are synonymous with the seven candlesticks which refer to the seven churches which each had a messenger associated with it. Revelation 1:20.

**7 And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne. 8 And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim of Isaiah 6:1-3.

**The four and twenty elders:** Israel represented by their twenty-four elders. The fact that they were redeemed out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation is another key as to who they are.

Israel had been dispersed by God into all of the nations, amongst all the different kindreds, tongues and peoples and nations. Revelation 4:10, 5:14, 11:16, 19:4.

**Harps:** Musical instruments seen with each of the four and twenty elders. David played the harp. 1st Samuel 16:16.

He also wrote many prophetic psalms. The prophets also on occasions used harps when prophesying. 1st Samuel 10:5, 1st Chronicles 25:3 and Psalm 49:4.

**Golden vials full of odours:** Which are the prayers of the saints.

**9 And they sung a new song, saying,**

**Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation;  
10 And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.**

**A new song:** The song of the 144,000. Revelation 14:3.

**For thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood:** The "us" spoken of here is believing Israel, as they will finally receive the promise made to them back at mount Sinai in Exodus 19:5-6, to make of them an holy nation.

**Out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation:** Israel, God's elect is redeemed out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation wherein they have been dispersed.

**And hast made us unto our God kings and priests:** Exodus 19:5 and 6. See also 1st Peter 2:9 which spoken by the apostle of the circumcision to the remnant of believing Jews that believe in Jesus.

**We shall reign on the earth:** It is Israel that is to reign on the earth as kings and priests, while the church is reigning in the heavens. Matthew 5:5 and Ephesians 1:3.

**11 And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;**

**Many angels round about the throne:** There were ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands. The word thousands in the Greek is myrias, or myriad, meaning innumerable.

*Daniel 7:10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.*

**The beasts:** The Seraphim. Isaiah 6:1-3.

**The elders:** There were four and twenty of them. Revelation 4:10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

These verses tell us plainly that it is not the 144,000 witnesses from the tribulation period, by mentioning a number far greater than that. The multitude were the angels.

These verses also tell us that Jesus has finally received his kingdom from his father.

**12 Saying with a loud voice,**

**Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.**

**13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, heard I saying,**

**Blessing, and honour, and glory, and power, be unto him that sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb for ever and ever.**

**Power be unto him:** The usurped power that resided with Satan as the god of this world, will in this day reside with Jesus Christ forever more.

**14 And the four beasts said,**

**Amen.**

**And the four and twenty elders fell down and worshipped him that liveth for ever and ever.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim in Isaiah 6:1-3.

**The four and twenty elders:** Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

## Chapter Six

### The Four Horsemen

**1 And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts saying,**

**Come and see.**

**The Lamb opened one of the seals:** The Lamb is Jesus Christ, and seals are first mentioned in Revelation 5:1-2.

**The noise of thunder:** A Seraphim speaking with a thundering voice.



**The four beasts:** Seraphim of Isaiah 6:1-3.

**Come and see:** This phrase is used eight times, seven of them are by John himself. Psalm 66:5.

It is used four of those eight times in this chapter, and it is only used of the first four seals. Apparently, there is a time for Israel to come and see some things, and there is time that it is too late for them to come and see.

**2 And I saw, and behold a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer.**

**A white horse:** This rider is the Antichrist impersonating Jesus Christ. Matthew 24:4-5 where Jesus prophecies many false Christs for the time of Jacob's trouble.

While white is the color of surrender and peace, he will not be a peaceful man. He will use peace as a means to an end, and that end is the attempted destruction of Israel.

In Daniel 11:21-24 we read about this rider coming in peaceably and obtaining the kingdom with flatteries.

**And he that sat on him:** Nothing is said describing how the rider looks, just what he does with what is given to him.

**A bow:** A bow is used for warfare, and not peace. As you may expect he uses both it, and his crown to conquer many.

**A crown was given unto him:** A position of power was given unto him. He did not have this power in him, because he is a created being.

**He went forth conquering and to conquer:** To rule over people.

**3 And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second beast say,**

**Come and see.**

**4 And there went out another horse that was red: and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword.**

**When he had opened the second seal:** The "he" here is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) that also opened the first seal.

**The second beast:** The second of the four Seraphim. Isaiah 6:1-3.

**Come and see:** Israel's servants are to examine this rider and his deeds.

**Another horse that was red:** Zechariah 1:8, 6:1-7 and Matthew 24:6 where wars are predicted by Jesus for the time of Jacob's trouble.

**And power was given to him that sat thereon:** Power had to be given to him, because he is not all powerful as God is.

**A great sword:** As more power is given to the Antichrist, he uses it to inflict death on as many people, in as short as time as possible, to send as many people to hell as he can.

**5 And when he had opened the third seal, I heard the third beast say,**

**Come and see.**

**And I beheld, and lo a black horse; and he that sat on him had a pair of balances in his hand.**

**He had opened the third seal:** The "he" is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) that had opened the first two seals already.

**A black horse:** Matthew 24:7 where famines are prophesied by Jesus for the time of Jacob's trouble.

**A pair of balances:** This is probably the one world government stepping in with disaster relief after the plagues and wars. All the people will have to do to get help will be to take the mark, which will be the mark of the beast.

**6 And I heard a voice in the midst of the four beasts say,**

**A measure of wheat for a penny, and three measures of barley for a penny; and see thou hurt not the oil and the wine.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim of Isaiah 6:1-3.

**A measure of wheat for a penny:** A penny was a day's wages according to Jesus in Matthew 20:2.

**Three measures of barley for a penny:** Elisha gives us a little clue as to the meaning of this verse. 2nd Kings 7:1-18.

He says with a shekel you could get two measures of barley in Samaria the next day after the famine.

The shekel today is about a quarter. So, three measures of barley for 37.5 cents is not bad, but the day before it would cost you a whole day's wages.

**See thou hurt not the oil and the wine:** This phrase is used only one other time in scripture, and it is in the parable of the good Samaritan, who binds up the wounds of a Jew and pours in oil and wine.

There is even a horse in this story as well. Luke 10:34. It was a voice in the midst of the four beasts (the Seraphim) that says, "See thou hurt not the oil and the wine."

It could have been one of them, or it could have been Jesus himself. While things will be scarce God will take care of the remnant, not by the religious, but by Samaritans, and Gentiles who will bless Israel in that day.

At the judgment of the nations, those nations that give food, water, and shelter to one of these "my brethren" (the Jewish believers) they will have done it unto Christ and will receive a reward. Matthew 25:31-46. Genesis 12:1-3.

**7 And when he had opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth beast say, Come and see.**

**He had opened the fourth seal:** The "he" is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) from verse one who opens all four of these seals.

**The fourth beast:** The fourth Seraphim. Isaiah 6:1-3.

**Come and see:** This is the last time a Seraphim tells John to come and see. Israel, God's servants, is to examine this rider so they do not follow the Antichrist in that day.

**8 And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.**

**A pale horse:** It will be an unending cycle of death during this time, and half of the world's population will die as a result of the

wars, plagues and famines caused by the Antichrist and his horde of demons.

Matthew 24:8-9, where Jesus prophesies death for many in the time of Jacob's trouble. Notice the color of the fourth horse, Pale.

The word Pale comes from the Greek word Chloros, it means green, or greenish. Chloros is used only five times in scripture and four times it is translated green in Mark 6:39, Luke 23:31, Revelation 8:7, 9:4, and here as Pale.

**His name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him:** Power was given to Death and Hell over a quarter of the earth, and they used that power to kill people with war (sword) hunger, sickness and even the beasts of the earth. Revelation 20:13-14.

*Isaiah 28:15 Because ye have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with hell are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us: for we have made lies our refuge, and under falsehood have we hid ourselves: ..., 18 And your covenant with death shall be disannulled, and your agreement with hell shall not stand; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, then ye shall be trodden down.*

So, we have the four horses each represented by a different color, white, red, black, and pale (greenish). Is there any significance to those four colors?

What are the four colors of the flags of most of Israel's enemies today? White, red, black, and green.

These colors represent the four Caliphates that have ruled that area of the world at one time or another. The devil had the power of death:

*Hebrews 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;*

Contrast that verse with this one:

*Revelation 1:18 I am he that liveth, and was dead; and behold, I am alive for evermore, Amen; and have the keys of hell and of death.*

**9 And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:**

**He had opened the fifth seal:** The "he" is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) that had opened the previous seals.

Notice that there is no fifth Seraphim mentioned here to tell John to come and see, that is because God is not describing the rider on another horse this time. That time has passed. Now John sees the results of this rider.

**I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God:** This is the altar of incense, used to offer up the prayers of the saints to God. Matthew 24:9.

The altar in that first tabernacle in the wilderness was really just a shaded picture of the real one in heaven, where the souls that were slain were kept by God as a constant reminder to God of their sacrifice.

These souls were those of the tribulation saints that were martyred for their faith in Christ and their obedience to the word of God.

Notice it says the souls of them that were slain, and not their bodies. We have a soul that looks similar to how our body looks.

These martyred souls were not out in heaven just going to and fro, but they were being held for the time being under the altar of God.

This was most likely a window into paradise where God has these precious souls always on his mind, and in his sight, who will stand strong in the time of the great tribulation period.

Their souls would be awaiting the resurrection that would unite them with their bodies to rule and reign on the earth in the kingdom.

**And for the testimony which they held:** The word testimony means a witness that told what they saw and knew. Some people can witness something, but they never testify as to what they saw. These did, and they lost their life for it.

**10 And they cried with a loud voice, saying,**

**How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?**

**They cried with a loud voice:** These cries were their prayers for vengeance, not for themselves, but for God's holiness, which demanded a just recompense for their sin.

Prayers were to be heard by God at the altar of Incense. Their prayers will be answered by God when the seventh seal is opened in Revelation 8:1-5.

God is long suffering, and just, and not willing that any should perish, and those followers of the devil will get what is coming to them.

**How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou do not judge:** Judging and avenging are separate, but related things. 1st Samuel 24:12.

**And avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth:** Deuteronomy 32:43.

**11 And white robes were given unto every one of them; and it was said unto them, that**

**they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellowservants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they were, should be fulfilled.**

**White robes:** Daniel 12:10 speaks about robes being made white.

**Their fellowservants:** They are the brethren that are killed in the tribulation period, they are the saved Jews that are slain during this time.

**A little season:** This phrase is only used twice in the scriptures, and both are found in the book of Revelation. Revelation 20:3.

Since the tribulation period lasts only seven years and we can conclude that the little season will be considerably shorter than that, then we can assume that the little season mentioned in Revelation 20:3 is a similar amount of time.

**Their fellowservants:** In Matthew 18:21-35 we see one of only a few times that the word "fellowservants" is mentioned in it. The fellowservants are the good who repent and follow the Son like the remnant in those days.

**Their brethren:** The servant in Matthew 18:21-35 is unjust, and unforgiving. Those who are like him will die, sooner or later at the

hands of Satan or the plagues, but then they will spend an eternity in torment for their rebellion.

**12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;**

**He had opened the sixth seal:** The “he” is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) that had opened the four previous seals.

**A great earthquake:** This of course is the complete fulfillment of the prophecies of Joel which Peter mentioned in Acts 2.

The prophecies he quoted were only partially fulfilled on the day of Pentecost. Matthew 24:7, where Jesus prophecies earthquakes for the time of Jacob’s trouble. Isaiah 13:13 and Haggai 2:6 & 21.

**The sun became as black as sackcloth of hair:** The Sun did not change as described in Joel or Acts 2, on the day of Pentecost, but it will on a future day of Pentecost in the tribulation period.

**The moon became as blood:** The moon did not change as described in Joel or Acts 2, on the day of Pentecost, but it will on a future day of Pentecost in the tribulation period.

**13 And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. 14 And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places.**

**The stars of heaven fell to the earth:** This is a reference to the fallen angels (demons) that held positions in the heavens, which they received from Satan, who will be removed from them by force.

They will be gathered for their future punishment. Revelation 12:4.

**As a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind:** Satan, and his minions are nothing to God. They are like figs falling from a tree in a mighty wind.

God is going to shake the heavens as he said he would in Isaiah to shake out these usurpers. Isaiah 34:4.

*Isaiah 13:13 Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.*

*Isaiah 14:12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! 13 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: 14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Highest. 15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. 16 They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms; 17 That made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof; that opened not the house of his prisoners?*

This is the bottomless pit; it only has sides.

*Matthew 24:29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:*

**The heaven departed as a scroll:** At that moment, the darkness that rules the heavens will be rolled back (a curtain of darkness) and the inhabitants of this earth will see the LORD on His throne in heaven.

Verse sixteen also speaks of this amazing time when the earth will be able to see into the very throne room of God. The lost will flee, and run and hide, they will be afraid to look at the face of Him they had cursed for so long.

*Isaiah 34:4 And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree. 5 For my sword shall be bathed in heaven:*

**15 And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; 16 And said to the mountains and rocks,**

**Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: 17 For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?**

**Hide themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains:** *Isaiah 2:21.*

**The great day of his wrath:** This is the day of the Lord that has been promised in the old testament, when Christ returns to claim this world as his own.

Chapter six is in chronological order, and it takes you through the tribulation period, but it skips over many details, and takes us to the day of Judgment.

*Isaiah 2:19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.*

## Chapter Seven

### The sealing of the 144,000

**1 And after these things I saw four angels standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that the wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on any tree.**

**Four angels standing:** These will hurt the earth and the sea after the 144,000 are sealed. These are not to be confused with the four angels that were bound in the great river Euphrates in Revelation 9:14.

**The four corners of the earth:** The earth does not have corners. You do not live on a square shaped planet.

Genesis 28:14 says that Israel is spread abroad to the North, South, East and West, and in Isaiah 11:12 it says that Israel is dispersed to the four corners of the earth, and they will be re-assembled in their land.

It means they were standing in four directly different positions.

**The four winds of the earth:** They are mentioned as being from the four quarters of heaven in Jeremiah 49:36.

In Ezekiel 37:9 they are used to bring life back to a bunch of dry bones. Daniel 7:2 mentions them as striving upon the great sea. Daniel 8:8, Zechariah 2:6 & Matthew 24:31.

**That the wind should not blow on the earth:** God is merciful even in the time of great tribulation, and he will hold back his vengeance to ensure those who have found grace in his Son would be protected.

**2 And I saw another angel ascending from the east, having the seal of the living God: and he cried with a loud voice to the four angels, to whom it was given to hurt the earth and the sea, 3 Saying,**

**I saw another angel ascending from the east:** John saw an angel ascending from the east which probably meant he was ascending to heaven.

**This seal of the living God:** This is the name of God written on the foreheads of the 144,000. The seal is mentioned in Ezekiel 9:1-11 as a mark. Since God has a mark, the Antichrist has to have one.

*Ezekiel 9:4 And the LORD said unto him, Go through the midst of the city, through the midst of Jerusalem, and set a mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and that cry for all the abominations that be done in the midst thereof. 5 And to the others he said in mine hearing, Go ye after him through the city, and smite: let not your eye spare, neither have ye pity: 6 Slay utterly old and young, both maids, and little children, and women: but come not near any man upon whom is the mark; and begin at my sanctuary. Then they began at the ancient men which were before the house.*

**The four angels:** It was given to them to hurt the earth and the sea. These are not the same four angels as the ones bound in the great river Euphrates in Revelation 9:14.

**Hurt not the earth, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads.**

**4 And I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel.**

**Till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads:** 144,000 Jewish male virgins are sealed with God's name in their foreheads.

They go about doing his will throughout the first half of the tribulation period, preaching the gospel of the kingdom. Matthew 24:14.

These 144,000 are immune from the calamities that will befall the children of this world. These are not the only ones who get saved in the tribulation period but are the "firstfruits" of that age.

They are a special group that will have a special ministry around the throne of God in eternity.

**There were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand:** Twelve times twelve is one hundred and forty and four. Their jobs in the kingdom will correlate with their jobs that they had on the earth during the tribulation period.

**5 Of the tribe of Juda were sealed twelve thousand.**

**The tribe of Judah:** Judah is mentioned first, even though Reuben is the first born, because it is the tribe of the kings of Israel, from which Christ came.

**Of the tribe of Reuben were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Gad were sealed twelve thousand. 6 Of the tribe of Aser were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Nephthalim were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Manasses were sealed twelve thousand. 7 Of the tribe of Simeon were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Levi were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Issachar were sealed twelve thousand. 8 Of the tribe of Zabulon were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Joseph were sealed twelve thousand. Of the tribe of Benjamin were sealed twelve thousand.**

**Of the tribe of Manasses were sealed twelve thousand:** The tribe of Manasses replaces the tribe of Dan, who is missing from this list. Also, Ephraim is not listed.

The reason is that the tribe of Dan was totally given over to idolatry and it is excluded from this privileged group who have a special ministry in the future. 1st Kings 12:29-30.

The tribe of Dan will be brought back into their earthly inheritance in the kingdom. Ezekiel 48:1, 2 & 32.

Dan will of course be a smaller tribe than the rest of the tribes in the kingdom because Dan does not have 12,000 Danites sealed as do the other tribes during the tribulation period, and it will suffer numerically because of that.

Joseph's eldest son Manasseh did not receive the blessing from Jacob, because it went to his younger brother Ephraim instead. Genesis 48:15-22.

And here he receives this honor over his younger brother. Ephraim descendants are considered those of Joseph's lineage. Joseph still gets two portions thanks to the tribe of Dan.

**9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; 10 And cried with a loud voice, saying,**

**Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb.**

**After this:** After the sealing of the one hundred and forty and four thousand.

**A great multitude:** The words "after this," denote a space of time that has elapsed (three and a half years) from the time of the sealing of the 144,000, and the time that the tribulation saints sing praises unto God, prior to entering into their earthly kingdom.

The connection of these two groups in this same chapter seems to indicate the possibility that the 144,000 witnesses were considered prominently in this multitude praising Christ, along with all the other tribulation saints that were martyred for their faith.

**Clothed with white robes:** Daniel 12:10 about robes being made white.

**And palms in their hands:** Leviticus 23:40 & John 12:13.

**11 And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, 12 Saying,**

**Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim of Isaiah 6:1-3.

**13 And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, What are these which are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they?**

**14 And I said unto him, Sir, thou knowest.**

**And he said to me,**

**These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.**

**One of the elders:** One of the four and twenty elders. Revelation 4:10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

**What are these which are arrayed in white robes:** Notice that they came out of great tribulation, which is a reference to the second half of the tribulation period.

Their robes were made white in the blood of the Lamb, while God operates differently in different dispensations, it is still His blood that washes away every sin. Daniel 12:10 about robes being made white.

**And have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb:**

*Revelation 1:5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,*

**15 Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple: and he that sitteth on the throne shall dwell among them.**

**16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat.**

**Therefore are they before the throne of God:** These tribulation saints minister in the temple after the time of great tribulation. They will be taken care of as no one ever was. John is seeing things here that are occurring after the tribulation period.

**They shall hunger no more:** They will be filled who hungered after righteousness instead of taking the mark of the beast to get a meal.

**Neither thirst anymore:** Those who thirsted after righteousness instead of taking the mark of the beast will be filled.

**17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.**

**The Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them:** They shall hunger no more because the Lamb will feed them. Isaiah 53:7. Jesus is called the Lamb of God in John's gospel, while the other three gospels use different titles to describe him.

John then continues this imagery of Jesus as the Lamb in Revelation twenty-seven more times beginning in chapter 5.

**Living fountains of waters:** These will not thirst anymore because in the kingdom Jesus will lead them unto fountains of living waters. He actually is the fountain of living waters. Jeremiah 2:13.

*Zechariah 14:8 And it shall be in that day, that living waters shall go out from Jerusalem; half of them toward the former sea, and half of them toward the hinder sea: in summer and in winter shall it be.*

Many in Israel in the past forsook Jesus, who is the fountain of living waters, and unfortunately this will happen again in the time of Jacob's trouble.

*Jeremiah 2:13 For my people have committed two evils; they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, and hewed them out cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water.*

They trusted in their own works to supply their needs, but the cisterns they dug could not hold any water.

*Jeremiah 17:13 O LORD, the hope of Israel, all that forsake thee shall be ashamed, and they that depart from me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken the LORD, the fountain of living waters.*

We do not need to partake of the tree of life as these will, nor do we need to drink of these living waters as we already have eternal life today in the dispensation of grace.

**God shall wipe away all the tears from their eyes:** This is speaking about the saints who die in the tribulation period, who will have endured the most terrible time of tribulation anyone has ever seen.

## Chapter Eight

### The Seventh Seal

**1 And when he had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half an hour.**

**He had opened the seventh seal:** The "he" is the Lamb (Jesus Christ) that had opened the six previous seals mentioned in chapter six.

**Silence in heaven:** The silence was due to the awesome vengeance that was about to fall upon the earth for the martyring of the saints whose souls have been crying out to God from underneath the altar in Revelation 6:9.

**2 And I saw the seven angels which stood before God; and to them were given seven trumpets.**

**The seven angels which stood before God:** These are the seven angels which are the seven messengers to the seven churches mentioned in 1:16, 20 & chapters 2-3.

**To them were given seven trumpets:** These are used to make a pronouncement that something new was about to take place.

**3 And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given unto**

**him much incense, that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar which was before the throne.**

**Another angel came and stood at the altar:** The altar of incense in Exodus 30:27. Also called the golden altar in verse three.

Here we see the altar, and the throne of God in heaven, that are mentioned in chapter seven, which will remain in heaven, even when the city of new Jerusalem comes down to earth during the millennium.

Jesus will be interceding on Israel's behalf as their high priest during the tribulation period concerning their prayers.

**A golden censer:** Censers were torches used for light. Here the censer would be lit first, and then used to light the incense on the altar.

**Much incense:** Much incense is used because the incense represents the prayers of the saints. Much prayer will be offered up from saints at this terrible time. Revelation 6:9.

**Revelation 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.**

**The prayers of all the saints:** As seen in Revelation 6:9.

It is possible that the servants that were slain in the great tribulation period, will minister in the presence of God and the Lamb on earth in the kingdom. Just not in the city of new Jerusalem.

So, it would be consistent that these saved martyrs of the tribulation period would minister where the Lamb is ruling on earth, and not in the temple in heaven.

**4 And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the saints, ascended up before God out of the angel's hand. 5 And the angel took the censer, and filled it with fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings, and an earthquake.**

**The smoke of the incense:** When God was not pleased with the odor of incense, which represented mankind's sin, he immediately responds in righteous judgment as we see about to take place here.

When God was pleased with the incense, then the nation of Israel was blessed and the world with them.

**The prayers of the saints:** His response here is to the prayers offered up by the tribulation saints mentioned in Revelation 6:9-10.

**The censer:** Also called the golden censer above, was a torch for carrying the fire from the lampstand to the altar of incense.

**And cast it to the earth:** A tempest of hail. verse seven below. Isaiah 28:2.

**There were voices, and thunderings, and lightnings:** This phrase is mentioned four other times, in the book of the Revelation. Revelation 4:5, 11:19 & 16:18. This time the order of their appearance is reversed. Exodus 19:16.

**And an earthquake:** This time an earthquake is mentioned as part of God's punishment for those who were killing his servants.

**6 And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound. 7 The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire**

**mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.**

**The seven angels:** These are the angels of the seven churches of Asia mentioned in chapters two and three.

**The first angel sounded:** This is the angel of the church of Ephesus.

**And there followed hail and fire mingled with blood:** One-third of all the trees will be burnt up, and all the grass will be consumed at this time, near the close of the tribulation.

The blood that is mingled with it will be a result of this hail fire, which would also account for the enormous loss of life we read about in other portions of scripture related to this time. Isaiah 28:2. A tempest of hail.

This could be more centrally located around the nations surrounding Israel than worldwide, or it could be across the whole planet.

Verse seven says that the hail fire was cast upon the earth, but it does not say upon the whole earth. I believe it will span at least the three continents surrounding Israel. Was there hail fire in Moses's day? Yes. Exodus 9:24.

**8 And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood;**

**The second angel sounded:** This would be the angel of the church of Smyrna.

**As it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea:** This was around the Mediterranean Sea, and not the whole earth. This also happened in Moses' day to the Nile River.

**The third part of the river became blood:** *Exodus 7:18.*

**9 And the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were destroyed.**

**The third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died:** This probably happens when the fiery mountain hits initially.

This is part of the reason why the kingdom is referred to as the regeneration in Matthew 19:28 & Acts 3:19-21. The earth will have to be regenerated after all of this happens. Did any creatures in the Nile die in Moses' day? Yes. Exodus 7:18.

**The third part of the ships were destroyed:** The ripple effect of the massive tidal wave caused by the great burning mountain crashing into the seas will capsize a third of the ships in the sea.

**10 And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;**

**The third angel sounded:** This would be the angel of the church in Pergamos.

**A great star:** This star could be a large meteor, that falls and breaks up upon entry into earth's atmosphere and pollutes one-third of the rivers and fountains.

It could also be a fallen angel, which are called stars in the Bible, who do indeed fall from heaven. See the next chapter for more on this.

**The third part of the rivers:** A third part of the rivers that run into the sea (Mediterranean) would have the backwash of this great mountain, combined with the salt water that overflows into the rivers, and together they will kill much in the rivers.

**The fountains of waters:** The underground aquifers where the rivers also get much of their water supply from.

**11 And the name of the star is called Wormwood; and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.**

**The third part of the waters became wormwood:** This is possibly a broken-up star/meteor that falls from the heavens and breaks up over that area, which poisons all the water it hits, or it is some sort of fallen angel that has power to hurt these waters.

**The name of the star is called Wormwood:** Wormwood is mentioned numerous times in the old testament, and it is always associated with something bitter or poisonous.

It is translated as hemlock in Amos 6:12, a very poisonous plant. The poisonous water will not harm God's servants that believe Jesus is the Christ, because he promised that these signs would follow them in those days, not in our days:

*Mark 16:18 They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.*

**12 And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.**

**The fourth angel sounded:** This would be the angel of the church in Thyatira. The theme here is the phrase one-third, which leads many to believe that this punishment is reserved for the one-third of the world centered around Israel, Europe, and Africa.

It could be America is preserved the brunt of these terrible judgments, but I doubt it. America has turned so far from God in her later years.

**13 And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice,**

**Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound!**

**Woe, woe, woe:** The three woes are mentioned in the next two chapters. With every tragedy there follows an even worse aftermath, due to disease and famine.

The first woe is in Revelation 9, and it is the locusts that come out of the pit. The second woe ends in Revelation 11:14.

The third woe begins in Revelation 12:12. Satan has been thrown out of heaven here, and because of all the chaos the world cries out for help.

## Chapter Nine

### A star fall from heaven

**1 And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the pit.**

**The fifth angel sounded:** This is the angel of the church of Sardis which sounds his trumpet which causes a star to fall from heaven.

**A star fall from heaven:** Here John sees an angel (called a star) fall to earth with the key to a pit. Luke 10:18-19.

This star is called Abaddon in Hebrew, and Apollyon in Greek, who was originally called Lucifer:

*Isaiah 14:12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!*

**To him was given the key of the pit:** A key is something that is used to unlock something. This was a supernatural key because nothing has ever been able to open this pit before.

This key will be used again in Revelation 20:1, which would most likely be the fifth angel since he had it in verse one above.

**2 And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit.**

**He opened the bottomless pit:** The "he" is the star that fell from heaven. The word for bottomless in Greek is Abussos, which is where we get the word Abyss from.

**There arose a smoke out of the pit:** When this bottomless pit is opened, much of the sun's rays will be blocked by the intense smoke from it, which creates a period of great darkness.

This is a fulfillment of Joel 2. The angel of this pit brings nothing but darkness to this world. Revelation 9:11.

*Joel 2:30 And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke. 31 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and the terrible day of the LORD come.*

**3 And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power.**

**Locusts:** Does this remind you of the promise Christ gave to his disciples in Mark 16:17-18?

These locusts will have the power of scorpions to hurt all that are not sealed. Scorpions have power like serpents to sting people with poison. verse 5.

This is a dispensational truth that is in effect while the gospel of the kingdom is being preached during the tribulation period. Matthew 24:14.

*Mark 16:17 And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; 18 They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.*

Remember chapter eight when Wormwood affects the world's water supply? It will not affect God's sealed servants).

This promise is for the tribulation saint who will need these gifts to help them supernaturally endure to the end during the tribulation period, and to assist them in taking the gospel of the kingdom to every creature.

**4 And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.**

And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree: This commandment was from God, not from the king over them.

**Only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads:** Only the 144,000 Jewish young men have the seal of God in their foreheads, so this means everyone else is fair game for these locusts.

They torment people, and they leave the grass and trees alone. This is a supernatural army.

**5 And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man.**

**It was given that they should not kill them:** Over and over again the statement is made that "it was given," so, you should ask who did the giving, God, or Satan?

**They should be tormented five months:** These beasts let those they sting get a five-month taste of what the torment in hell will be like.

Those who help these people who have been stung will see their torment, and hopefully some of them will turn to God. There is no fire associated with these locusts, but in the next portion of scripture there will be plenty of fire.

**6 And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them.**

**In those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it:** This is a five-month period when men get a glimpse of what hell is like.

The torment will be so bad that all effected will desire death. Because people are eternal beings, and they would go to hell immediately if they could die, but they cannot. There are some who are not stung, and this probably sobers some into trusting Christ.

**7 And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. 8 And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions.**

**The shapes of the locusts were like horses prepared unto battle:** These are unlike any locust the world has ever seen, or ever will see.

These are not military vehicles they are supernatural creatures that look like tiny horses prepared for battle with armor on them. If someone steps on them, or hits them, they just keep on stinging.

**Crowns like gold:** Shiny.

**The faces of men:** Beards possibly.

**The hair of women:** Long hair.

**The teeth of lions:** Sharp and strong.

**9 And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. 10 And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months.**

**Their power was to hurt men five months:** The phrase five months only appears in one story and that is Elisabeth hiding her pregnancy for five months, that is 150 days on the biblical calendar, and the number 150 appears in the story of the flood:

*Genesis 7:21 And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, both of fowl, and of cattle, and of beast, and of every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth, and every man: 22 All in whose nostrils was the breath of life, of all that was in the dry land, died. 23 And every living substance was destroyed which was upon the face of the ground, both man, and cattle, and the creeping things, and the fowl of the heaven; and they were destroyed from the earth: and Noah only remained alive, and they that were with him in the ark. 24 And the waters prevailed upon the earth an hundred and fifty days.*

I know that being tormented for five months is not the same thing as being destroyed from the earth, but these two incidents have different participants.

In Noah's day, all flesh was corrupted (See Genesis chapter six) except for Noah and his family, so God destroyed them to save the last remnant of humanity left.

In this chapter, in the last book of the Bible, God is being merciful by giving people a small taste of what hell will be like for five months so as to warn the rest of the world to not continue rebelling against their Creator and Redeemer.

**11 And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.**

**They had a king over them:** Proverbs 30:27 tell us that locusts travel in bands regardless of the fact that they have no king over them. Here however, we read about a different kind of locust that actually has a very bad king over them.

Satan is cast down from heaven at the middle-point of the tribulation period, and he will release Abaddon, or the spirit of Antichrist, upon the world.

Satan may think that he is accomplishing something for himself in his personal war with God, but he is only helping God do exactly what he has ordained would be done to those who reject his Son.

**In the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon:** A destroying angel.

**In the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon:** A destroyer.

**12 One woe is past; and, behold, there come two woes more hereafter.**

**One woe is past:** The locusts.

**Two woes more hereafter:** Revelation 11:1 4 & 12:12.

**13 And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God,**



**The sixth angel sounded:** This would be the angel of the church of Philadelphia. The Euphrates River is the actual border of Israel's territory that they will inherit in their kingdom:

*Genesis 15:18 In the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates.*

For everything that happens in the physical realm, there is something going on there to control it in the spiritual realm.

**A voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God:** This is the altar of incense mentioned in the previous chapter, where voices are mentioned in verse five. Revelation 6:9 & 8:3-5.

**14 Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates.**

**15 And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men.**

**Loose the four angels which were bound in the great river Euphrates:** These angels were bound in the great river Euphrates, so they are not good angels.

Were there any angels in scripture that were ever bound by God in the past? 2nd Peter 2:4 and Jude 6 each mention angels that are bound in chains of darkness, but they are bound in hell, not in the Euphrates river.

Perhaps God bound all but four of those angels which left their first estate in hell, and he reserved these four just for this purpose.

**Which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year:** While these four angels prepared in the spiritual realm, there was probably preparation going on in the physical realm that coincided with these horsemen in the following verses.

This verse provides a way for tribulation saints to mark time during that period as 391 days, and 1 hour has to pass before one-third of men are killed. They will know it is coming in advance.

**To slay the third part of men:** That would be two billion people if this were to occur soon.

**16 And the number of the army of the horsemen were two hundred thousand: and I heard the number of them.**

**The army of the horsemen:** The army mentioned here is a supernatural army according to the prophet Joel. Joel 2 below.

**Two hundred thousand:** Here comes the army of horsemen led by the four angels that were bound in the Euphrates River. This army of horsemen will kill one-third of all the people alive on the earth.

**17 And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses were as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone. 18 By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths.**

**The fire:** What did God use to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah? Fire and brimstone.

**The smoke:** Genesis 19:28 & Revelation 14:10-11.

**The brimstone:** Genesis 19:24, Psalm 11:6 and Revelation 14:10-11.

**19 For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails were like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt.**

If John were able to describe things so someone in our time period could relate, it would not have made sense to all of those generations that have come before ours.

**Their power is in their mouth, and in their tails:**

*Joel 2:1 Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for the day of the LORD cometh, for it is nigh at hand; 2 A day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; there hath not been ever the like, neither shall be any more after it, even to the years of many generations. 3 A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land is as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them. 4 The appearance of them is as the appearance of horses; and as horsemen, so shall they run. 5 Like the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap, like the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble, as a strong people set in battle array. 6 Before their face the people shall be much pained: all faces shall gather blackness. 7 They shall run like mighty men; they shall climb the wall like men of war; and they shall march every one on his ways, and they shall not break their ranks: 8 Neither shall one thrust another; they shall walk every one in his path: and when they fall upon the sword, they shall not be wounded. 9 They shall run to and fro in the city; they shall run upon the wall, they shall climb up upon the houses; they shall enter in at the windows like a thief. 10 The earth shall quake before them; the heavens shall tremble: the sun and the moon shall be dark, and the stars shall withdraw their shining: 11 And the LORD shall utter his voice before his army: for his camp is very great: for he is strong that executeth his word: for the day of the LORD is great and very terrible; and who can abide it?*

**And had heads, and with them they do hurt:** With their lionlike teeth.

**20 And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk: 21 Neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their fornication, nor of their thefts.**

**Yet repented not of the works of their hands:** Even though their idols could not help them, they do not repent because they have taken the mark of the beast, and can't be saved.

**Neither repented they of their murders:** Those that survive keep on doing what they have been doing.

## Chapter Ten

## The seven thunders

**1 And I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud: and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire:**

**Another mighty angel:** This mighty angel is most likely Jesus Christ appearing as an angel/messenger because of the amazing things associated with him in the description that follows.

This mighty messenger was delivering a message to John. Revelation 1:13, 5:2 & 18:21. The word angel is from the Greek word "Angelos" which means a messenger, it does not mean a being with two wings, and a halo.

There are all kinds of individuals who are messengers, and many of them are called angels in the Bible, but they are not all angels, as most people think when they think of an angel.

Jesus often appeared as the "angel of the LORD" in the old testament, but it is clear from scripture that Jesus is God, who took upon himself human flesh. He did not take on the nature of angels:

**Hebrews 2:16** *For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.*

**Clothed with a cloud:** The first cloud in the Bible is found in Genesis 9:13. Numerous times you will find clouds associated with those ascending or descending to and from heaven.

Exodus 19:9, 34:5, Deuteronomy 5:22, Psalm 78:14, Ezekiel 10:4, 38:9, Daniel 7:13, Matthew 24:30, Mark 13:26, Luke 21:27, 1st Thessalonians 4:17, Revelation 1:7 & 14:15.

**A rainbow was upon his head:** Where do we find the most famous rainbow of them all in scripture? Immediately following the flood when God destroyed the world that then was. Genesis 9:13.

Watch the context of this chapter and see if there are any similarities. Ezekiel 1:28 & Revelation 4:3. God made a promise that he would never again destroy the world with a flood. The next time it will be with fire.

**His face was as it were the sun:** Daniel 10:6, and the transfiguration in Matthew 17:2.

**His feet as pillars of fire:** Daniel 10:6 & Revelation 2:18.

**2 And he had in his hand a little book open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth, 3 And cried with a loud voice, as when a lion roareth: and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices.**

**A little book open:** The little book contains prophecy about the tribulation period that we are not privileged to know.

It is sealed up until the tribulation period when it will be revealed to his servants (Israel), because they are the ones who will need it. Daniel 12:1-4 & Jeremiah 3:16.

Notice it says that he appears "clothed with a cloud, and a rainbow upon his head." The only other time a rainbow is mentioned in the Bible is Genesis chapter nine. God put a "bow" in the sky to serve as a reminder that he was not going to destroy the world by a flood?

The only other time the word "rainbow" is mentioned in the Bible is also in Revelation 4:3 when John is caught up to heaven and he sees the rainbow round about the throne of God.

No doubt John got some comfort from seeing this rainbow because he would naturally assume that God was going to spare mankind.

God said he would never let Israel be utterly destroyed because of the covenant he made with them. Deuteronomy 4:31.

This "little book" will no doubt help the new believers endure the latter part of the tribulation period. It may also contain doctrinal information specific to that time period.

The preceding generations did not obtain this knowledge because it is sealed up to us so that God's will would be done at that time.

**He set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth:** This tells us which way the angel is facing. If the sea is the Mediterranean Sea, and the land is Israel, which they are, then the angel was facing towards the south.

Egypt and Arabia are to the south. It does not say that he put his right foot in the sea, but upon the sea. Who do we know from scriptures that can walk on water? Jesus.

**Seven thunders uttered their voices:** Thunders are often associated with voices in scripture. James, and John were called the sons of thunder. Mark 3:17.

They were to thunder out the word of God. Notice in Psalm 29:3 that the words thunder, voice, and water all appear together. Exodus 19:16 below, and Revelation 16:18.

**Psalm 29:3** *The voice of the LORD is upon the waters: the God of glory thundereth: the LORD is upon many waters.*

**4 And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me,**

**Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered, and write them not.**

**The seven thunders had uttered their voices:** Their voices thundered.

**Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered:** Daniel was not allowed to write about many things that John was to write about. John was not allowed to write about things that will occur to bring the mystery of God to its conclusion.

Paul mentions that he knew a man caught up into paradise, who had heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter in 2nd Corinthians 12:4. That man was John. Revelation 10:7.

**And write them not:** Psalm 118:89 For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven. When the words that the seven thunders are needed by God's people, the seals will be opened, and their message will get to those that need them.

**5 And the angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth lifted up his hand to heaven, 6 And swore by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created heaven, and the things that therein are, and the earth, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that**

**there should be time no longer:**

**The angel which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth:** *Revelation 10:3.*

**Lifted up his hand to heaven and swore:** This is the swearing an oath, just like what we do when we swear to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth in court.

**There should be time no longer**

**There should be time no longer:** Jesus, as the angel of the Lord, swore by God the Father that there should be time no longer.

There literally will be a time when time will be done away with. Ephesians calls this the dispensation of the fullness of time in Ephesians 1:10. Sin exists in time, not outside of time.

This occurs after the Millennial kingdom runs its course of a thousand years, and then the new heaven and the new earth are created.

These seven thunders will either be revealed during the tribulation period for his saints at that time, or at the time when Satan is loosed for a little season.

**Him that liveth for ever:** This is from the Song of Moses in Deuteronomy 32:39-40.

*Deuteronomy 32:39 See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand. 40 For I lift up my hand to heaven, and say, I live for ever.*

**7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished, as he hath declared to his servants the prophets.**

**The seventh angel:** This is the angel of the church of Laodicea.

**The mystery of God:** Notice that it says, "in the days of the voice of the seventh angel," not in the day of the voice of this angel.

This angel sounds his voice out over many days, not just one. Then it says when he (the seventh angel) begins to sound, not sounds once. This lasts for days.

How many times he sounds, we do not know for sure. This is not when the rapture occurs! "At the last trump" because it is the last trumpet in the tribulation period.

There are trumpets in the kingdom as well that are mentioned later on, but the rapture happens at the end of the dispensation of grace, not during the tribulation period.

This mystery of God has to do with the Gentiles, for Mystery, Babylon the great, the mother of harlots is the false one-world church of the Antichrist.

Notice that the mystery of God had to be finished during this time, as it had been declared, or spoken to his servants the prophets.

This mystery has nothing to do with any of the mysteries revealed to the apostle Paul concerning the body of Christ. It has to do with God defeating Satan's plan for dominion on the earth.

*Daniel 12:1 And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. 2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. 3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever. 4 But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end: many shall*

*run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased. 5 Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river. 6 And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, How long shall it be to the end of these wonders?*

Or, when will the mystery of God be finished?

*7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river, when he held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and swore by him that liveth for ever that it shall be for a time, times, and an half; and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.*

Verse seven here in Daniel chapter twelve helps us better understand. Revelation 11:7.

*8 And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these things? 9 And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. 10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand. 11 And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days. 12 Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days. 13 But go thou thy way till the end be: for thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.*

Notice that there are a thousand two hundred and ninety days mentioned in Daniel, but the two witnesses in chapter eleven witness for only 1260 of those 1290 days.

One additional month of thirty days is mentioned here that is after the two witnesses are killed. This is the time in which the seventh angel is blowing his trumpet. Remember he does not just make one noise from his trumpet, but it blasts for days.

Most likely for all thirty days mentioned here, where the third and final woe from chapter eleven occurs. It is best for you to go ahead and read Revelation 11:1-15 now to better understand what is going on here, and Daniel 12.

Then Daniel mentions another date even further out which is "the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days." Forty-five more days after the previous 30 days just described which occurred after the two witnesses in the next chapter are killed and rise again.

The people that patiently wait until that day will be blessed; we know this from the first part of the verse.

**As he hath declared to his servants the prophets:** The prophets have spoken to Israel since the world began of God's dealings with them specifically because they are the nation that will rule during the kingdom:

*Luke 1:70 As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been since the world began:*

*Acts 3:21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God hath spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began.*

The times of restitution of all things in Acts 3:21 is a reference to the millennial kingdom. The mystery program for us was kept secret, or hidden since the world began, during the time that God was speaking to the world through his prophets.

**Romans 16:25** Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began.

The first time in the Bible where it talks about a **thunder, and a voice and a trumpet**, was at the giving of the law to the nation of Israel, so they may know how to live in the land once they entered it.

Here, His word is being delivered to Israel again just before their kingdom begins. What had to happen before they entered the promised land?

The unbelievers had to die off in the wilderness. Here the unbelieving Israelite is being purged from their ranks, so only believing Israel will enter into their kingdom.

**Exodus 19:16** And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that was in the camp trembled.

**8 And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said,**

**Go and take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth.**

**The little book:** It is little because it is a small, but specific part of God's plan to deal with Satan's rebellion on the earth. See verse above.

**The angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth:** *Revelation 10:3.*

**9 And I went unto the angel, and said unto him,  
Give me the little book.**

**And he said unto me,**

**Take it, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey.**

**Take it, and eat it up:** This also happened in Ezekiel's day:

**Ezekiel 3:1** Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, eat that thou findest; eat this roll, and go speak unto the house of Israel. **2** So I opened my mouth, and he caused me to eat that roll. **3** And he said unto me, Son of man, cause thy belly to eat, and fill thy bowels with this roll that I give thee. Then did I eat it; and it was in my mouth as honey for sweetness. **4** And he said unto me, Son of man, go, get thee unto the house of Israel, and speak with my words unto them. **5** For thou art not sent to a people of a strange speech and of an hard language, but to the house of Israel; **6** Not to many people of a strange speech and of an hard language, whose words thou canst not understand. Surely, had I sent thee to them, they would have hearkened unto thee. **7** But the house of Israel will not hearken unto thee; for they will not hearken unto me: for all the house of Israel are impudent and hardhearted.

**It shall make thy belly bitter:** The little book consisted of the words that John was to prophecy "before" many peoples, nations, tongues, and kings.

Some wrongly state it is the gospel of John, or his other writings, which makes no sense at all. Why would the gospel of John, or 1st, 2nd, or 3rd John need to be kept a secret at that time? It would not need to be kept secret.

**It shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey:** God, by having John eat up this little book, caused it to become a part of him that he would not be able to forget. It was God's way of preserving his word. Song of Solomon 5:16 & Psalm 119:103.

**10 And I took the little book out of the angel's hand, and ate it up; and it was in my mouth sweet as honey: and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was bitter. 11 And he said unto me,**

**Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings.**

**Thou must prophesy again before many peoples:** Notice John would prophesy again "before" many people, it does not say "to" many people, because John is an apostle to the circumcision.

The circumcision, the Jews, are spread out into every nation because of their breaking the covenant they made with God.

Some believe that John will be sent back during the tribulation period to deliver the contents of this little book he received two thousand years ago. That is a possibility because both Elijah and Moses make appearances during the last days.

It may also mean that as one of the twelve judges during the millennial kingdom, John will prophesy again concerning the words of these seven thunders when Satan is released from the bottomless pit at the end of the kingdom.

Those who will be believers in the tribulation period will have a much greater understanding of this book than us today, as they will have the wisdom that goes along with experiencing it. They will learn firsthand from the 144,000, and then the two witnesses mentioned in the next chapter.

## Chapter Eleven

### My Two Witnesses

**1 And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and the angel stood, saying,**

**Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein.**

**A reed like unto a rod:** John is given a reed to measure the tribulation temple.

A golden rod shows up later on with one of the seven angels, who had the vials full of the seven last plagues, to measure the city of new Jerusalem in Revelation 21:15-17.

**Measure the temple of God:** The temple during Jesus' day had four courts, not one, which proves that they are not the same temple.

There will be worship on the temple mount by the Jews during the tribulation period, prior to the middle of the seven-year period, then Antichrist will enter it and proclaim that he alone is God.

**And the altar:** This is the brazen altar that is to be placed in front of the temple, where animals are to be offered as a sacrifice, as the altar of incense was inside of the temple.

**And them that worship therein:** There will be a temporary place given for the Jews to worship as a result of the seven-year covenant, but that will be broken at the mid-point of the tribulation period.

**2 But the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the**

### **Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months.**

**The court:** This is a reference to the courtyard that will still be in use by the Gentiles in the tribulation period, where Islam has a Mosque.

**The holy city:** In Nehemiah 11:1 and 18, Jerusalem is first called the holy city. Psalm 46:4, Isaiah 48:2, 52:1, Daniel 9:24, Matthew 4:5 & 27:53. It is later used of new Jerusalem in Revelation 21:2 & 22:19.

**Shall they tread under foot forty and two months:** The middle of the tribulation period is forty-two months of thirty days each, according to the Jewish calendar, which is exactly 1260 literal 24-hour days. Verse 3.

It has to be trod under foot during the second half of the tribulation period when the antichrist breaks the covenant he made with Israel. Jesus actually tells us when Jerusalem will be trodden under foot for forty and two months in Luke 21:20-24 below:

*Daniel 9:27 And he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate.*

The “one week” is a time period of seven years, with the first forty-two months being referred to as the tribulation period. The following forty-two months of 1260 days being called the great tribulation. See Genesis 29:27 for a description of a biblical week.

*Luke 21:20 And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. 21 Then let them which are in Judaea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto. 22 For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. 23 But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. 24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.*

The times of the Gentiles does not end until Christ reigns from Jerusalem in his kingdom.

**Let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto:** Jesus is talking about Jews getting out of Jerusalem, and those in the country not entering into Jerusalem, because the armies are coming to carry them away as slaves.

Then the plagues will begin to happen, and a terrible earthquake will happen at the end of the forty and two months. Revelation 11:10.

### **3 And I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days, clothed in sackcloth.**

**I will give power unto:** God is the one giving power unto “his” two witnesses, for 1260 days which is  $42 \times 30 = 1260$ . Forty-two months of 30 days each, totaling 1260 days, or three and one-half years.

**My two witnesses:** The words “two” and “witnesses” are only used together in two books of the Bible, here and in Isaiah 43 and 44 where God calls Israel his witnesses.

*Isaiah 43:10 Ye are my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen:*

Here we read about His two witnesses. Why two witnesses?

*Deuteronomy 19:15..., At the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall the matter be established.*

**A thousand two hundred and threescore days:** Forty-two months, consisting of thirty days each, is exactly one thousand two hundred and sixty days. Each year was 360 days.

A leap month is occasionally added in the Jewish month of Adar, Adar Alef (1) and Adar Beit (2), to make up the difference. The days are literal 24-hour days just as the scriptures go out of their way to prove to the reader.

This 360-day year is a part of the lunar calendar which counts how many times the moon rotates around the earth, where a solar year calendar counts the earth revolving around the sun every 365 days.

**Clothed in sackcloth:** Sackcloth is black in color and is associated with mourning. Genesis 37:34 & Revelation 6:12. It is mentioned 46 times in the scriptures.

### **4 These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth.**

**The two olive trees:** These two witnesses are Moses and Elijah. We are sure of the identity of Elijah because scripture is clear on his identity.

We also have Moses and Elijah appearing with Jesus, Peter, James, and John at the transfiguration in Mark 9:2, Matthew 16:24-28 & 17:1-4.

Some claim Enoch is the second witness because he was the only other man besides Elijah not to taste of death, and the scripture says:

*Hebrews 9:27 And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment.*

So, based on this, they say that Enoch and Elijah would both have to come back and die. At least one scripture is used on this guess, but we all know what the Bible says about only having one scripture to build a doctrine off of.

*2nd Peter 1:20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation.*

Enoch was a Gentile, and therefore he is unqualified to be a witness during this time of Jacob's (Israel's) trouble.

No law keeping Jew is going to follow a Gentile preacher. The miracles performed by one of these two witnesses are identical to those which Moses performed.

Moses represents the law, while Elijah represents the writings of the prophets, and who better to come back and preach for three and a half years to Israel than these two? Israel is identified as an olive tree in the book of Judges:

*Judges 9:8 The trees went forth on a time, to anoint a king over them; and they said unto the olive tree reign thou over us.*

Israel is represented in the next eight verses as four different types of trees. An olive, fig, vine, and bramble. See also Isaiah 3:13 where Israel is called a vine. Israel is usually referred to as an olive, or a Fig tree. One tree is national Israel, and the other religious Israel.

In Romans 11:11-24 we read from the apostle Paul writing to the body of Christ about Israel that Israel is an Olive Tree being cut

off because it was dried up like a bramble, and producing no fruit because of their unbelief.

**The two candlesticks:** In Revelation 1:20 we learned that the seven churches in Asia were called seven golden candlesticks, and here these two individuals are called candlesticks.

A candlestick bares light for all to see. That is what these two prophets do for Israel. You get light from olive oil.

*Zechariah 4:11 Then answered I, and said unto him, What are these two olive trees upon the right side of the candlestick and upon the left side thereof?*

One on the right side and the other on the left side of the candlestick. If the two prophets are represented as olive trees, then who is the candlestick?

Jesus. Who wanted to sit on both sides of Jesus in his kingdom? James and John. They couldn't because God said it would be given to them for whom it is prepared. Mark 10:40. Who does God tell us in Zechariah 4 will stand on either side of the candlestick (the Light)? The two witnesses.

**12 And I answered again, and said unto him,**

**What be these two olive branches which through the two golden pipes empty the golden oil out of themselves?**

**13 And he answered me and said,**

**Knowest thou not what these be?**

**And I said,**

**No, my lord.**

**14 Then said he,**

**These are the two anointed ones, that stand by the Lord of the whole earth. Zechariah 4:1-10.**

There is also an argument that they are actually Joshua the priest, and Zerubbabel, because they are called that very thing in their day by the LORD, and they are anointed and stand by the Lord of the whole earth.

**5 And if any man will hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth, and devoureth their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed.**

**If any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed:** Both Moses and Elijah had their enemies consumed by fire during their earthly ministries, while Enoch did not. Numbers 16:35, & 2nd Kings 1:10.

**6 These have power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will.**

The first part of verse six speaks of Moses, and the second, and last part, both point to Elijah, not Enoch, a Gentile.

**These have power to shut heaven, that it rain not:** Elijah mentions this in 1st Kings 17:1.

**And have power over waters to turn them to blood:** God says this to Moses in Exodus 7:17.

**And to smite the earth with all plagues:** Moses did this in Exodus 8-11.

**7 And when they shall have finished their testimony, the beast that ascendeth out of the pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them.**

**When they shall have finished their testimony:** One thousand two hundred and sixty days later, according to verse three:

**The beast that ascendeth out of the pit shall make war with them:** The beast (the antichrist) cannot kill them until God allows it to happen.

When does the beast ascend out of the pit? After he is killed, and rises again from the wound to his head. That is how he becomes the son of perdition.

Perdition is a place, it is the bottomless pit, and it is a place of death. From there he is birthed, or born again, as the son of the pit, or the son of perdition, or the son of death.

This beast ascends out of the bottomless pit the exact moment that the Dragon (the angel of the pit is cast down to earth with a key to the pit, and he resurrects the beast, who until this time was never referred to as the beast.

Satan now incarnates himself into the man of sin, so that the world will wonder after him from then on.

*2nd Thessalonians 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;* 2nd Thessalonians 2:1-12.

*John 17:12 While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled.*

*Acts 1:24 And they prayed, and said, Thou, Lord, which knowest the hearts of all men, shew whether of these two thou hast chosen, 25 That he may take part of this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas by transgression fell, that he might go to his own place.*

Some versions sadly say, "That he should go where he belongs," which has a totally different meaning.

This all occurs at the mid-point of the tribulation period, because the two witnesses are to preach for three and a half years. Once they are finished preaching, God allows the devil to kill them, and not before.

**And shall overcome them, and kill them:** Moses and Elijah are killed. Where did Moses die at? On the other side of the Jordan River.

He never entered the promised land except for the brief time with Elijah talking to Jesus about his death there on the mount of transfiguration. What does the book of Jude tell us about Moses' death? That Michael contended with Satan over Moses' body.

*Jude 1:9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.*

Why? Did they both want the body of Moses? When God resurrects Israel, he will re-unite the body with the spirit.

Satan wanted Moses' body to try to prevent that from happening. Satan lost the dispute, because Michael said, the Lord rebuke thee.

*Luke 13:33 Nevertheless I must walk to day, and to morrow, and the day following: for it cannot be that a prophet perish out of Jerusalem.*

Both of the prophets Moses and Elijah will then be killed in Jerusalem to fulfil this verse.

**8 And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified.**

**The great city:** This is unfortunately the city of Jerusalem.

**Which is spiritually called Sodom and Egypt:** Jerusalem's spiritual leaders led the nation away from the Messiah instead of to him at his first coming.

Because of that, it has remained the most tumultuous city in the world, and will remain so until they acknowledge their Saviour.

**9 And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and an half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves.**

**Shall see their dead bodies:** This would not have been possible even seventy-five years ago, but with the invention of the television, and now the internet, the whole world will know what is going on.

Remember, the devil is the prince of the powers of the air, which includes the airwaves, and he will use them to deceive the world into following him.

The average lost person when he realizes that these two individuals are causing it not to rain will hate these two, because they are causing them much hardship.

The world does not care that it is a judgment from God, they just care whether they are going to be able to grow the food they need, or that they will have water to drink.

**Three days and an half:** Why three days and a half, and not three? Because that is how many years these two witnesses prophesied to them.

**10 And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth.**

This verse implies that these plagues are global, and not just centered around the Middle East. The people of the earth will know that the two prophets were the ones tormenting them, and yet they do not repent.

**11 And after three days and an half the spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them.**

**After three days and a half:** One day for each year they prophesied to Israel. verse 5. They prophesied forty and two months which is three-and-one-half years. Thirty-six months make three years, and six more make forty and two months.

They served Israel for half of a biblical week. A biblical week lasts for seven years according to the story of Jacob and Laban in Genesis 29:27.

**The spirit of life from God entered into them:** This will be just as it was with Adam's lifeless body on the sixth day of creation when God breathed in Adam's nostrils the breath of life and he became a living soul.

Here we have the second, and third people being begotten from the dead in the scriptures, with Christ being the first prior to this event. Begotten to die no more. Romans 8:2.

**12 And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them,**

**Come up hither.**

**And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them.**

**A great voice from heaven:** Revelation 14:2 & 16:17.

**Come up hither:** Here we see a rapture of these two old testament saints after their resurrection from the dead. They were literally begotten of the dead never to die again.

The same words "come up hither" are used as were used in Revelation 4:1 to call John up in the Spirit except these two were called up physically. They both will put on incorruption and will be able to stand in God's presence.

**They ascended up to heaven in a cloud:** Numerous times in this book, and throughout the Bible, we see clouds associated with ascending and descending to and from heaven.

In Acts 1:9 a cloud received Jesus at his ascension. In Revelation 1:7 it says that "he cometh with clouds" at the end of the tribulation period (which is his revealing).

**13 And the same hour was there a great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand: and the remnant were affrighted, and gave glory to the God of heaven.**

**A great earthquake:** The tenth part of the city that fell is a reference to the old city of Jerusalem.

**In the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand:** It is interesting thing to note is that there are about 35,000 people that live in the old city today. If a bunch of the Jews flee into the wilderness, then the numbers would be spot on, and they will be. Luke 21:24.

**The remnant were affrighted:** Notice the reference here to the remnant. It is a reference to the Jewish believers that have survived unto this point.

The fact that it is not the remnant of people remaining on the earth is clear by the statement that they gave glory to the God of heaven.

Even with all the signs and wonders the lost continue rebelling against God. So, it is clear that the remnant of Jewish believers were not the ones crushed when the earthquake happens, but her enemies will be.

Perhaps when the two witnesses speak their last message those who were there continually to oppose them notice that they are no longer being protected by God.

When they kill these two prophets, God allows an earthquake to kill 7,000 people in that city that opposed God's men.

The remnant of believers will see what has happened and give glory to God. Just like in Goshen, Egypt where Israel's enemies suffered, but God's people were protected.

**14 The second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly.**

**The second woe is past:** This began in Revelation 12:12. There is no way the two witnesses minister in the first three and half years alongside the 144,000.

**The third woe:** The seventh trumpet will open the seven vials. Notice that the third woe cometh quickly, soon after the second woe.

**15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying,**

**The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.**

**The seventh angel sounded:** This is the angel of the church of Laodicea.

**The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord:** When it says that glory and honour and power are given to Christ, it is all that was usurped by Satan, as the god of this world.

This is the long-awaited fulfillment of old testament prophecy. The apostles even asked after Christ's resurrection if He would at that time restore again the kingdom to Israel, and now it is finally at hand. Acts 1:6.

This is the point in heaven where all of Satan's armies are removed from the thrones, and principalities, and powers which they were usurping, and they are replaced by the body of Christ.

We in the church have a heavenly destiny, while Israel has an earthly destiny. Heaven will at that time operate completely in accordance with God's will as Satan has been evicted forever more.

With the church in its place in the heavens the final three and a half years known as the great tribulation begins. The kingdoms of this earth are humbled so that at the onset of the kingdom they will fall right in line under the Messiah's reign.

**16 And the four and twenty elders, which sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God, 17 Saying,**

**We give thee thanks, O LORD God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come; because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned.**

**The four and twenty elders:** Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

**18 And the nations were angry, and thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great; and shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth.**

**The nations were angry:** Why do the heathen rage. Psalm 2:1 below:

**Thy wrath is come:** *Isaiah 13:9.*

**The time of the dead, that they should be judged:** The dead believers from Israel's program will be raised and receive rewards in their kingdom at this time.

**Thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and to them that fear thy name:** *Revelation 22:12.*

**And shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth:** *Isaiah 13:9.*

*Psalms 2:1 Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? 2 The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against the LORD, and against his anointed, saying, 3 Let us break their bands asunder, and cast away their cords from us. 4 He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh: the Lord shall have them in derision. 5 Then shall he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure. 6 Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion. 7 I will declare the decree: the LORD hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee. 8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession. 9 Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel. 10 Be wise now therefore, O ye kings: be instructed, ye judges of the earth. 11 Serve the LORD with fear, and rejoice with trembling. 12 Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in him.*

Saints that will have gone on to heaven will not try and talk God out of these judgments, because we will be like him in that we shall see his plan, and our wills will be aligned with his perfect will once we are changed.

**19 And the temple of God was opened in heaven, and there was seen in his temple the ark of his testament: and there were lightnings, and voices, and thunderings, and an earthquake, and great hail.**

**The temple of God was opened in heaven:** We see here a temple in heaven at the end of this chapter that is not the same temple that is found in the first verses of this chapter.

This temple is without sin; and it will always have the glory of God residing in it. It is the temple of God in heaven, that the earthly one is patterned after. Revelation 15:5.

**The ark of his testament:** The place where Jesus sprinkled his blood on the actual mercy seat. Revelation 15:5 also.

**And there were lightnings, and voices, and thunderings:** This is now the third time that these three words are used together.

The other two times are in Revelation 4:5 and 8:5, and the order of their appearance is different, plus, they are also used in Exodus 19:16 at the giving of the law.

**And an earthquake, and great hail:** These do not occur in heaven, or there would have been a heaven quake instead. These originate in heaven from the temple of God, because of the sinfulness of mankind.

## Chapter Twelve

### A woman clothed with the sun.

**1 And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars:**



**A great wonder in heaven:** A great sign. John saw a vision which he said was a great wonder. This is the first of only two times a wonder is seen in heaven.

The second, and last time, is in verse three of this same chapter. The last wonder is not a great wonder, it is just pure evil.

**A woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet:** This woman is the nation of Israel. The sun represents Jacob (Israel) while Rachel is represented as the moon, as seen in Genesis 37:9-11.

**Upon her head a crown of twelve stars:** These crowns represent the twelve tribes of Israel. Jacob's name is changed to Israel in Genesis 32:28. Notice the use of stars in Joseph's dream related to his brothers in Genesis 37:

*Genesis 37:9 And he dreamed yet another dream, and told it his brethren, and said, Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me.*

Joseph told his dream to his family, and he said that he saw eleven stars make obeisance to him. We know that he meant his eleven brothers, because his father Jacob interprets the dream for us in the following verse:

*Genesis 37:10 And he told it to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him, What is this dream that thou hast dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to the earth?*

## **2 And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered.**

**Being with child:** This woman (the nation of Israel) gives birth to many in the future tribulation period, not in the past.

Israel will also be born again in a day according to Isaiah 66:7 and 8 at the end of the tribulation period, before she can enter into her literal kingdom.

*Isaiah 66:7 Before she travailed, she brought forth; before her pain came, she was delivered of a man child. 8 Who hath heard such a thing? who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.*

Since the woman here represents the nation of Israel there is precedent here that the man-child that she bares also represents a future group of people that are males (144,000 of them). They make up the firstfruits of a nation:

## **3 And there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads.**

**Another wonder in heaven:** The first, and only other time a wonder appears in heaven is in Revelation 12:1 above. The first one was a great wonder; this one was not so great.

**A great red dragon:** This is the devil, and the seven heads with crowns, and ten horns, represent two things, the nations under his control during the tribulation period, and their leaders.

**Seven heads:** A seven-headed dragon is what John sees, but the dragon is symbolic of Satan, and his seven world rulers.

The first head/leader that ruled over Israel was Egypt, then Assyria, then Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, and Rome makes the

sixth that was ruling at the time of John's writing the book of the Revelation. The seven heads:

*Revelation 17:9 And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth. 10 And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.*

The seventh that is not yet come, and it will be the last which will continue for a short time in the tribulation period, before his kingdom is destroyed by Christ. Christ will establish an everlasting kingdom as seen in Nebuchadnezzar's vision:

*Daniel 2:44 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.*

**Ten horns:** These ten horns are later identified as kings who give their power to the beast.

*Revelation 17:12 And the ten horns which thou sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. 13 These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast. 14 These shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.*

**Seven crowns:** These crowns are on the seven heads, which denote that they have power given to them to rule at different times throughout history.

## **4 And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth: and the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born.**

**The stars of heaven:** One third of the angels are cast down to the earth by the dragon. Angels are depicted as stars in several places in the Bible. Luke 10:18-19.

Here John records a future event that will happen in the tribulation period. This is not telling about an event that already happened with Jesus' birth, and Herod trying to kill Jesus, but a yet future event.

**The woman:** This is the nation of Israel, and she is about to give birth here again, to form the nucleus of a nation that will rule all nations in the kingdom, which thing the dragon hates, and he will try to stop.

**Her child:** Who is Israel's child that she gives birth to supernaturally in the tribulation period? The 144,000 witnesses. They are the firstfruits of the next dispensation after the dispensation of grace is over.

Their birth as the man child occurs when they are sealed at the beginning of the tribulation period in Revelation chapter seven. Revelation 14:4.

Satan, the Dragon, knows that the man child (the 144,000) will rule over the nations with a rod of iron along with Christ during the kingdom, so he wants to try to kill them.

The man child however is protected by God and caught up to new Jerusalem a while after they are sealed in their foreheads according to Revelation 7:3.

**As soon as it was born:** Jesus was not devoured as soon as he was born, he lived on earth for thirty-three years.

The man child comes into being quickly, and in just three and one-half years is caught up to heaven after it's sealing mentioned in chapter seven.

**5 And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne.**

**A man child:** Now we see the nation of Israel giving birth to "a man child" during the tribulation period that will rule and reign with Jesus Christ over all nations. Who is this man child?

Since the woman represents more than one person i.e., the nation of Israel, and the dragon represents more than just the devil, he represents the seven nations and ten kings.

The man child also represents more than just one person. The man child represents the 144,000 male Jewish, virgins in the first half of the tribulation period.

**To rule all nations with a rod of iron:** *Revelation 19:15 and 2:26-27:*

**Her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne:** Notice that it says that "the man child" gets caught up (raptured) unto God and his throne.

This is the only "mid-trib" rapture found in the Bible, and it is made up solely of the 144,000 male Jewish, virgins. We as the church, the body of Christ, will already be in heaven for the past three and a half years.

Read John's letter to Thyatira again, and notice a comment about who besides Christ rules with a rod of iron during the kingdom. It is those that overcome in the first half of the tribulation period.

Those that lay in the bed with the prophetess Jezebel during that day will also go into the great tribulation.

Which implies that those who do not will miss that time. The only way they can miss it is to die or be raptured. They (the man child) are raptured.

The man child cannot be Jesus because the context is the tribulation period when the man child is born, and when he is caught up to heaven.

*Revelation 2:26 And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations: 27 And he shall rule them with a rod of iron;*

**6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days.**

**The woman fled into the wilderness:** The woman (Israel) flees into the wilderness (the city of Petra, in Jordan) and is protected there for three and a half years.

This is also prophesied in the old testament in Deuteronomy 32:11 & Hosea 2:14-19. God will protect those Jews in the future that go into the wilderness completely.

**Where she hath a place prepared of God:** The woman goes into the wilderness after her man child is taken into heaven for the second half of the tribulation period (the great tribulation) after they are sealed in their foreheads.

This is at the same time that Satan sets up his image in the temple, after he and his fallen angels are cast out of heaven at the midpoint of the tribulation period.

**That they should feed her there:** Who are the "they" that feed her (Israel) there? Angels, Gentiles? The "her" here is the woman that is identified as the nation of Israel above.

Gentiles will also be blessed in the kingdom for obeying Genesis 12:1-3, by feeding Israel in the time of Jacob's trouble. She will also eat the hidden manna in the wilderness once again. Revelation 2:17 & Matthew 25:31-46.

**A thousand two hundred and threescore days:** Forty and two months, or three and one-half years.

If God did it before for forty years, he can do it again for forty-two months. See also the feeding of the 5,000, and the 4,000 in the gospels. Matthew 16:8-10.

**7 And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, 8 And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven.**

**There was war in heaven:** This war did not take place around the throne of God in the third heaven, but rather in the second heaven.

This is where the Sun, Moon, Stars, and Planets all reside. The second round of wars will take place here on the earth, and it will last for three and a half years.

**Michael and his angels fought against the dragon:** Michael is one of the chief princes (Angelic principalities). He is Israel's prince. Daniel 10:13 and 21.

Two-thirds of the stars (angels) make up the angelic host that fight here with Michael against Satan and his third of the angelic host. Daniel 12:1 & Jude 9. Principalities: Romans 8:38, Ephesians 3:10, 6:12, Colossians 1:16 & 2:15.

**The dragon fought and his angels:** This is the great red dragon that was first introduced in Revelation 12:3.

The dragon, and his angels, lose this fight to Michael, and his angels, and they are all cast out of the second heaven down to the earth.

The dragon had one third of the angelic host follow him when he rebelled. Revelation 12:4.

**Neither was their place found any more in heaven:** They had been in places of authority in heaven, but now they are going to be removed from the offices they held.

These positions were originally given to them by God before they followed Lucifer in his rebellion. There will be a shaking of the heavens at this time. Hebrews 12:26-27.

Since that day they have been usurping the places of authority they held, to do the bidding of the god of this world, Satan. These positions will be occupied by members of the body of Christ in the future.

**9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him. Revelation 20:2.**

**The great dragon was cast out:** Isaiah 27:1 is a prophecy about God punishing Leviathan, and slaying the dragon that is in the sea. Revelation 13:1.

**That old serpent:** This is a reference to the serpent in the garden of Eden. Genesis 3:1-14

**Called the Devil:** Diabolos in Greek. Satan is never called the devil in the old testament.

**Satan:** The word is from the Hebrew language, and it means an adversary.

**He was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him:** Satan drags his minions to earth to make war with Israel, which brought forth the man child (the 144,000), and with the remnant of her seed (believing Israel).

This begins the second half of the tribulation period known as the great tribulation period. Luke 10:18-19 & Revelation 12:4.

### **10 And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven,**

**Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.**

**Now is come salvation:** The heavens are delivered, or saved from any more of Satan's influence in them, and all of his principalities (fallen angels) are cast down with him.

**The kingdom of our God:** Now the heavens have been purged of all those angels that rebelled against him, and nothing will ever happen again in the heavens that is not something that is a part of God's plan.

Power is then given to Christ in the heavens that was being usurped by Satan for the past 6,000 years for his evil plan.

The kingdom reign of God can begin in the heavens at this point, but the earth must wait another three and a half years for it to exist down here.

**The accuser of our brethren is cast down:** John is identifying for us who it is specifically that Satan is accusing before God day and night; it is his brethren, Israel. Not believers in the body of Christ today.

This happens at the halfway point of the tribulation period because we read that the kingdom of our God is come sometime soon after the casting out of Satan and his devils.

Three and one-half years will be a long time to those going through that period, but in God's timing it is a short time. Luke 10:18-19.

When Satan and his fallen angels are cast out of heaven, all the thrones, principalities, and powers that they usurped after their rebellion will be occupied by the body of Christ.

We have a heavenly destiny, while Israel has an earthly one in their kingdom promised to them by the Father.

**11 And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.**

**They overcame him:** The "him" is Satan.

**By the blood of the Lamb:** 1st Peter 1:19 & Revelation 7:14.

**By the word of their testimony:** These are Jewish believers in the tribulation period who are the overcomers mentioned in Revelation chapters 2 and 3, as well as other believers in those times from all over the world.

These tribulation saints will lose their lives for their testimony for Christ. Matthew 10:32-33 below:

*Matthew 10:32 Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. 33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven.*

**They loved not their lives unto the death:** This is what Jesus meant by taking up their cross and following him in the gospels:

*Mark 8:34 And when he had called the people unto him with his disciples also, he said unto them, Whosoever will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me. 35 For whosoever will save his life shall lose it; but whosoever shall lose his life for my sake and the gospel's, the same shall save it. 36 For what shall it profit a man, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? 37 Or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul? 38 Whosoever therefore shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.*

**12 Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time.**

**Rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them:** The heavens will be purged of Satan and his forces forever.

**Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea:** The devil will soon be cast into the bottomless pit for a thousand years, and he wants to kill as many people as possible.

The first two woes are mentioned as having passed in Revelation 9:12 & 11:14.

**The devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time:** Forty and two months.

**13 And when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child.**

**When the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth:** Jesus mentioned this to the seventy in the gospel of Luke:

*Luke 10:17 And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name. 18 And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. 19 Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. 20 Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.*

**He persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child:** Why not persecute the man child as well?

Because he cannot, the man child was caught up into heaven as we read earlier. We will read about him again in heaven singing on mount Zion in Revelation 14:1-5.

This verse tells us that the devil will persecute the Jews unlike any other time in their history. Hitler was an evil man, but even he pales in comparison to the devil who will try to finish what he inspired Hitler to do.

Why does Satan hate the woman (Israel) so much? Because of the man child she produced, and the remnant of her seed (believing Israel) will soon rule all nations with a rod of Iron.

The very same nations that for 6,000 years Satan had been ruling as the god of this world. 2nd Corinthians 4:4.

**14 And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent.**

**Two wings of a great eagle:** Israel is given the means to escape into a place of safety.

The method of their flight is not as important as the fact that she is rescued. She may have to walk all the way there. Has this ever happened before in scripture? Yes, it has:

*Exodus 19:4* **Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles' wings, and brought you unto myself.**

Will he do it again? Yes, he will.

*Isaiah 40:31* **But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.**

**That she may fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished:**

*Isaiah 16:1* **Send ye the lamb to the ruler of the land from Sela to the wilderness, unto the mount of the daughter of Zion. 2 For it shall be, that, as a wandering bird cast out of the nest, so the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon. 3 Take counsel, execute judgment; make thy shadow as the night in the midst of the noonday; hide the outcasts; bewray not him that wandereth. 4 Let mine outcasts dwell with thee, Moab; be thou a covert to them from the face of the spoiler: for the extortioner is at an end, the spoiler ceaseth, the oppressors are consumed out of the land. 5 And in mercy shall the throne be established: and he shall sit upon it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging, and seeking judgment, and hasting righteousness.**

**A time, and times, and half a time:** It will not be the antichrist; he already rescued them from a previous invasion to gain their trust before committing the abomination of desolation.

Isaiah 16 tells us that the remnant will flee into the land of Moab (Jordan) to be protected from the spoiler (the antichrist).

God will provide manna from heaven again during the final three and a half years to feed his people once again in the wilderness.

He did it for forty years the first time, three and a half he can do with his eyes closed. He will probably send them some Quail as well. Revelation 2:17.

**From the face of the serpent:** See the face of the spoiler in Isaiah 16:5 above:

**15 And the serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away of the flood.**

**The serpent cast out of his mouth water as a flood after the woman:** Here we read of one of the many ways that Satan will try to destroy the Jews during the time of Jacob's trouble.

Some have said that he will release the water from a dam in the north to accomplish this. The serpent is also the prince of the power of the air, he can stir up floods supernaturally:

*Daniel 9:26* **And after threescore and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that**

**shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and unto the end of the war desolations are determined.**

If you have ever been in the Middle East when heavy rains come, whole areas can be wiped away because the ground is so hard and dry that it cannot absorb the water immediately and raging floods result.

**16 And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed up the flood which the dragon cast out of his mouth.**

**The earth helped the woman, and the earth opened up her mouth, and swallowed up the flood:** The dragon has a mouth, but the earth also has a mouth that God opens as he watches over Israel.

God keeps his promises to Israel, even when she does keep hers, that she will never be totally destroyed by her enemies. Genesis 4:11 & Numbers 16:30-32.

**17 And the dragon was wroth with the woman, and went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.**

**The dragon was wroth with the woman:** Satan was angry at the nation of Israel.

**And went to make war with the remnant of her seed:** During the tribulation period only a remnant of the Jews will keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.

These are the ones Satan is the most concerned with, and whom he focuses his attack on, not the ones worshipping the antichrist back at the temple. He already has them.

Why not make war with her man child (The 144,000)? They were caught up to heaven.

**Which keep the commandments of God:** During the tribulation period the believing Jews will keep the laws of Moses i.e., the commandments.

All of these religious groups that are trying to obey these commandments today, that are meant for Israel under the law, are being disobedient to God by not following Paul today. Romans 6:14-15 and 1st Timothy 1:15-16.

**The testimony of Jesus Christ:** Is the spirit of prophecy according to Revelation 19:10. The gift of prophecy will be in use a lot during the time of Jacob's trouble, and it will give the remnant a greater understanding of all the things written in the Bible.

*Matthew 10:32* **Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. 33 But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven.**

## Chapter Thirteen

### A beast rise up out of the sea

**1 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.**

**I stood upon the sand of the sea:** This represents the land of Israel. John was on the shoreline facing the Mediterranean Sea.

**And saw a beast rise up out of the sea:** It has seven heads, but how is that possible? Each head is a leader of a Gentile kingdom that ruled over Israel and the world at one time.

The beast is the same beast as the one that the woman is riding in Revelation 17. The beast is the antichrist. Isaiah 27:1 & Revelation 12:9.

The beast is mentioned in chapter twelve, and it is the world's kingdoms, with their leaders controlled by Satan himself, and it is the political system where the antichrist himself will arise from.

**Having seven heads:** The first head/leader that ruled over Israel was Egypt, then Assyria, then Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, and Rome makes the sixth that was ruling at the time of John's writing the book of the Revelation.

One head is yet to come, who will set up his ten-nation confederacy during the tribulation period, three of them will be destroyed, and the number will become seven.

Seven Gentile kingdoms will rule over the earth led by the god of this world Satan, through his self-appointed leaders that typify him, the last one he will literally possess at the mid-point of the tribulation period.

It was mentioned in chapter twelve that this beast (a Leviathan) from the sea (Gentile nations) had only seven crowns, and now we see it with ten.

These seven heads were the leaders of the seven Gentiles nations that would rule over Israel during what scripture calls "**the times of the Gentiles**" When Israel is not the "head" nation on the earth, as it will be in the kingdom.

*Luke 21:24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.*

**Ten horns:** A head, and a horn are different; they are not the same thing. The last group of ten nations that will come against Israel are the ten horns, and their leaders, that all give power to their leader:

**Seven crowns:** Each of the first six Gentile world leaders had a crown affiliated with their rule over Israel, and so does the seventh and final one. He is the last leader to rule over Israel while she is in the wilderness. He is the antichrist himself.

**And upon his heads the name of Blasphemy:** Notice at the end of verse one that it says that upon each of its (the beast's) heads were the name of blasphemy. Each of these kingdoms' leaders had the "name" of blasphemy accredited to them.

Satan is the controller of these leaders trying to set up his kingdom on the earth, which is opposed to God's kingdom, with Israel ruling under their Messiah. God has to intervene over and over again to deliver Israel from the beast in each of its seven manifestations over time.

But there is coming a day when the stone that is cut without hands (Daniel 2:44-45) will crush all these kingdoms, and he rule with a rod of iron for a thousand years.

**2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.**

This is a reference to the beast mentioned a half century earlier in Daniel 7:4-6. These beasts are explained to Daniel as four world empires, the last of which is Rome.

They are in reverse order from Daniel 7:4-6. Remember that two of these beasts had come and gone, Egypt and Assyria, by the time Daniel is with his countrymen in captivity in Babylon.

**Like unto a leopard:** Daniel 7:6. This beast is diverse from it however, having the parts of three other kingdoms making up its being.

**His feet were as the feet of a bear:** Daniel 7:5.

**His mouth as the mouth of a lion:** Daniel 7:3-4.

**The dragon gave him his power:** The "him" here is the antichrist.

**And his seat:** As leader over a confederacy of nations.

**And great authority:** Ten other kings give their allegiance to him.

**3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast.**

**One of his heads as it were wounded to death:** This refers to the seventh king during the tribulation that comes against Israel in the middle of the tribulation period.

The antichrist here imitates the resurrection of Christ. Because of his "as it were" resurrection, he will fool the world into thinking he is the Christ. See the comments in Zechariah 11 below and notice the connection with Judas Iscariot:

*Zechariah 11:12 And I said unto them, If ye think good, give me my price; and if not, forbear. So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver. 13 And the LORD said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was prised at of them. And I took the thirty pieces of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the LORD. 14 Then I cut asunder mine other staff, even Bands, that I might break the brotherhood between Judah and Israel. 15 And the LORD said unto me, Take unto thee yet the instruments of a foolish shepherd. 16 For, lo, I will raise up a shepherd in the land, which shall not visit those that be cut off, neither shall seek the young one, nor heal that that is broken, nor feed that that standeth still: but he shall eat the flesh of the fat, and tear their claws in pieces. 17 Woe to the idol shepherd that leaveth the flock! the sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye: his arm shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened.*

**And his deadly wound was healed:** He was resurrected at the same time that Satan is cast down to the earth, and he enters into him and resurrects the beast/antichrist, who went into the bottomless pit when his deadly wound occurred.

**And all the world wondered after the beast:** He does not have complete control over all the world, because God does not allow him to.

**4 And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying,**

**Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?**

**They worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast:** Here we see some of the signs and wonders the devil will use to deceive the world at this time. The antichrist will use his

newfound fame to increase his power, and he will make war with Israel.

Satan wants to get a foothold in the land, and then he reveals himself to Israel for who he really is, and believing Israel will be forced to flee into the wilderness.

He gave power unto the beast, whose body was slain with a deadly wound, when he entered into him. He also had previously entered into Judas on the night of Jesus' betrayal in John 13:2, 27, Luke 22:3 and John 6:70.

**They worshipped the beast:** They thought that no one could make war with him and win, because even if you were to kill him, he can just rise from the dead to fight you again.

**5 And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months.**

**There was given unto him a mouth speaking great things, and blasphemies:** This beast is a prominent person in the push for peace in the Middle East at the beginning of the seven-year peace treaty which he himself confirms with many according to Daniel. Daniel 9:24-27.

He is elected, or appointed, to office because of his efforts for peace, and then he turns his focus against Israel.

**And power was given unto him to continue forty and two months:** Three and one-half years.

**6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.**

**To blaspheme his name:** The name of Jesus.

**And his tabernacle:** The temple.

**And them that dwell in heaven:** All the saints that have been martyred before that time.

**7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.**

**It was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them:** Since he cannot really defeat a believer on the battlefield, he will also attack them with his mark of the beast.

**And power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations:** All the power that is given to the beast comes from Satan. Remember he is still the god of this world; he wields a lot of power.

This is the power that he once offered to Jesus in the wilderness temptation, if he would just fall down and worship him:

*Matthew 4:8 Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; 9 And saith unto him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. 10 Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve.*

The temptation that Jesus endured, and was victorious over, will be offered to the world in the tribulation period. Most will succumb to it.

**8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.**

**And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him:** Anyone not taking the mark will be hunted down as an enemy of the one world government, and destroyed.

The world will be engulfed in great famine and wars, and this beast will unite them and promises a recovery if everyone will be a part of this new government by showing their allegiance by taking his (the beast's) mark.

There will be no neutral position during this time. Either your name is in the book because you have trusted in Christ, or you worship the dragon, and the beast, and your name is not in the book.

There is no half in, half out. If someone claims to be an Atheist in those days, they are really on the devil's side.

**Whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb:** Power is given to him over all whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb (Jesus) who was slain from the foundation of the world.

People who do not endure unto the end of the tribulation period, and who take the mark of the beast, have their name removed from the book of life of the Lamb.

Their names were written there when they first believed that Jesus was the Christ, the Son of the living God.

It is removed when they chose not to follow Christ any further. This is not possible in the dispensation of grace that we are in today, but it will be during the tribulation period. Revelation 21:27.

**Slain from the foundation of the world:** It was a part of God's plan from the foundation of the world that Christ should suffer at the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again. Luke 24:7.

**9 If any man have an ear, let him hear. 10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.**

**If any man have an ear, let him hear:** This is speaking of believers who have discerning ears.

**He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity:** Just as Israel's rebellion against God caused God to bring Babylon down upon her to punish her, so God will here as well.

Israel will flee for her own good, and God will supernaturally protect those who will flee.

**He that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword:** Those who stay, and fight, will be destroyed by the sword. Those who flee, are those who have ears to hear.

**The patience and the faith of the saints:** These saints will have to be patient, and trust in God to take care of them, and to resist the mark of the beast, to enter into their earthly kingdom. Revelation 1:9, 2:2-3, 3:10 & 14:12.

**Another beast coming up out of the earth**

**11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.**

**Another beast coming up out of the earth:** The first we saw in verse one was a beast that rose up out of the sea.

The sea often represents the Gentiles, but this one comes up from out of the earth, which is symbolic of coming from Israel, meaning he is a Jew.

**He had two horns like a lamb:** Because he looks like a lamb to the world, because he is a peace maker.

**He spake as a dragon:** He can rally the world with his fair speeches that are filled with empty promises and lies that damn the soul.

**12 And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.**

**To worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed:** He is resurrected.

**13 And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men,**

**He doeth great wonders:** Spectacular signs that are supernatural, but demonic. 2nd Thessalonians 2:6-12.

#### An image of the beast

**14 And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that**

**they should make an image of the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live.**

**In the sight of the beast:** His power comes from the first beast, and it appears he must be in a close proximity to him to perform his miracles.

**An image of the beast:** This worshipping of an image will repel any Jewish ideas that this man might still be their Messiah as they flee to the wilderness. Israel will realize that their true Messiah came 2000 years ago. Revelation 14:9-11, 15:2, 16:2, 19:20 & 20:4.

**The wound by a sword:** Notice we see here that beast will be wounded by a sword during a coup attempt, or in a battle, and Satan uses that to fool the world. Satan is the great imitator.

*Zechariah 11:17 Woe to the idol shepherd that leaveth the flock! the sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye: his arm shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened.*

**15 And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as that would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.**

**He had power to give life unto the image of the beast:** He will be accompanied by the antichrist, who will perform many miracles, such as causing fire to come down from heaven to deceive the people into following him.

The religious leader (the antichrist) will make an image of the political leader.

**And cause that as many as that would not worship the image of the beast should be killed:** He will demand that everyone pay homage to, or worship, the image of the beast (political leader), like in Daniel chapter three.

#### The mark of the beast

**16 And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads:**

**A mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads:** Other versions say, "on their right hand, or on their foreheads."

You could make a mistake reading the wrong version of the Bible in those days, that will cost you your soul for eternity. In and on are two totally different words, which mean different things.

**17 And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.**

**No man might buy or sell:** This mark is to gain financial power. The love of money will cause many to take the mark.

**The mark:** This could possibly be a bar code with just lines on it. The lines represent numbers.

**The name of the beast:** This second option is the most mysterious, but it has the same consequences. Damnation. This is the sin mentioned in Hebrews that cannot be repented of.

**The number of his name:** The value of this man's name. See also the number of a man below.

**18 Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.**

**Here is wisdom.** *Revelation 17:9.*

**Let him that hath understanding:** A believer who understands biblical numerology.

**Count the number of the beast:** The number is 666.

**It is the number of a man:** Man was created on the sixth day. Genesis 1:26-31

**Six hundred threescore and six:** This is an old English way of saying six hundred and sixty-six. A score of years equals twenty years. Three scores is three times twenty, or sixty. Notice in verse seventeen that people could have any one of the three identifiers, and not just one.

Some will identify with the devil by having his name on them, while others will choose the mark, and others will choose the number, each one will damn their souls to hell.

To determine the numerical value of a person's name you must first assign a numeric value to each letter in the alphabet. The Hebrew alphabet actually assigns numerical values to each Hebrew letter.

You cannot figure out who the antichrist is before the rapture occurs. Only when the Holy Spirit raptures us out can he be revealed.

#### ALPHANUMERIC CHART

A=1, B=2, C=3, D=4, E=5, F=6, G=7, H=8, I=9, J=10, K=20, L=30, M=40, N=50, O=60, P=70, Q=80, R=90, S=100, T=200, U=300, V=400, W=500, X=600, Y=700, Z=800

Remember Greek and Hebrew are not English, and just because a person's name equals 666 in one language does not make it equal that in another.

Today almost everything that we buy now has a U.P.C code (bar code) on it. Each bar code has two series of numbers on them divided by two long thin lines.

These two lines serve as a signal to a bar code scanner to break what it is reading momentarily, and then to start scanning the second half of the U.P.C. symbol.

The two sets of identical longer lines at the beginning of the bar code and at the end, also serve as signals to the scanner to start scanning, and to stop scanning.

It is no coincidence that the numerical equivalent of these lines are the number six. On each product we buy there is the number 666.

So, should we stop buying things because they have 666 on them? No. The mark that the Bible is talking about is one that is implanted "in" our forehead or "in" our right hand.

Today, new technology has been developed with 5G that has made it so much easier to track people.

A person who reads a modern Bible during the tribulation period will determine that he can take this mark, because in his Bible it says the mark will be "on" the hand, or "on" the forehead, instead of "in" them.

This will damn a person to Hell eternally. Revelation 13 says that everyone who does not take the mark will be killed, but it also says in later chapters that everyone who receives the mark will die and spend eternity in hell.

According to the book of Revelation the mark of the beast is not mandatory until the mid-point of the tribulation period, but nowhere does it say that it cannot be in place prior to that point on a limited basis.

We only know that it is optional up until the midpoint of the tribulation. I believe we are living in some of the most interesting times the world has ever seen, or will see.

#### The six different roman numerals

I=1, V=5, X=10, L=50, C=100, M=500

1 + 5 + 10 + 50 + 100 + 500 = 666

What a coincidence!

### Chapter Fourteen

#### The earth was reaped

Revelation fourteen begins in heaven after the tribulation period is ended but remember that the book of Revelation is not always in chronological order, and bounces back and forth in time.

The events of the seven-year period are actually described three or four different times, and from different vantage points, like the four gospels describe the ministry of Christ.

**1 And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father's name written in their foreheads.**

**A Lamb stood on the mount Sion:** Which mount Sion is John talking about? Notice that it says "the" mount Sion, instead of just mount Sion.

There is a mount Sion in Israel, but the mount Sion here is the mount Sion in heaven. Deuteronomy 4:48 & Hebrews 12:22.

**And with him an hundred and forty and four thousand:** The 144,000 have been caught up to heaven at the mid-point of the tribulation period in Revelation 12:5.

**His Father's name written in their foreheads:** The seal of God that is placed in his 144,000 servants; it is the name of the Father.

YHVH is the Hebrew consonants that make up the name of God. Pronounced YaH-VeH or YaH-WeH.

Satan has his counterfeit seal in Revelation 13:17, where a person could have his name, or his number, written in their forehead.

**2 And I heard a voice from heaven, as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of a great thunder: and I heard the voice of harpers harping with their harps:**

**A voice from heaven, as the voice of many waters:** Psalm 29:3, Revelation 14:2 & 19:6.

**The voice of harpers:** These are not angels. These are the 144,000 servants mentioned earlier, as you will see in the next verse.

David played a harp in 1st Samuel 16:16. The prophets on occasion used harps when prophesying. 1st Samuel 10:5, 1st Chronicles 25:3 & Psalm 49:4.

**3 And they sung as it were a new song before the throne, and before the four beasts, and the elders: and no man could learn that song but the hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth.**

**A new song:** These do not sing the song of Moses, but rather a new song which commemorates the latest trials that Israel and the world's believers will have faced during the tribulation period.

This song is for the 144,000 only to sing, and notice that they were redeemed "from the earth." This happened at the mid-point of the tribulation period. Revelation 12:5.

*Isaiah 42:10 Sing unto the Lord a new song.*

**The four beasts:** Seraphim in Isaiah 6:1-3. The general class of angels does not have any wings at all, the Seraphim have six, while the Cherub have only two. 1st Kings 6:24.

The number of Cherubim in the Bible can be counted on one hand. Angels are always referred to as masculine in the Bible, never feminine.

**The elders:** The four and twenty elders from Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

**The hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth:** The 144,000 are the man child that was caught up at the mid-point of the tribulation in Revelation 12:5.

**4 These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb.**

**They which were not defiled with women:** These witnesses are all Jewish men who have devoted themselves wholly to God's service during the first half of the tribulation.

A Jewish young man who is not a virgin is not qualified to be one of the 144,000, because God will require these special young men to follow him wherever he goes.

They cannot serve God as they are required to do if they have a wife that needs them during this terrible time. They will have responsibilities there that will disqualify them, and in a sense defile them, from being able to do this job.



**For they are virgins:** When the scriptures are clear, we have no right to spiritualize them.

**These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth:** Jesus told his disciples while he was with them, that they had to forsake all, and come and follow him or they could not be his disciples:

*Luke 14:26 If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple. 27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.*

*Luke 14:33 So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not all that he hath, he cannot be my disciple.*

**These were redeemed from among men:** Revelation 12:5.

**Being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb:** These 144,000 are the firstfruits of those that are redeemed in the tribulation period.

Which means they were the first, there were none before them. That means they ministered in the first half of the tribulation period, not the second. Leviticus 23:10-20.

Those who believe on Christ after the 144,000 are taken up will be the rest of the harvest (a sort of second fruits). They are the innumerable multitude who get saved in the second half of the tribulation period. Leviticus 23:10-20.

What happens when the firstfruits appear according to Leviticus 23? You would count seven weeks (49 days) until Pentecost (which means 50). At that time, you would put in the sickle.

**5 And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God.** Psalm 32:2, John 1:47 (Nathaniel) and 1st Peter 3:10.

**Guile:** Subtilty, deceit, craft, trickery.

**6 And I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people,**

**I saw another angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting gospel to preach:** The next verse tells you what the angel preached:

**7 Saying with a loud voice,**

**Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.**

**The everlasting gospel:** There is no mention here of the death, burial, and resurrection of Christ in this gospel that is preached.

This is the everlasting gospel which will begin to be preached there at the end of the tribulation period as they cross into the new dispensation known as the kingdom age.

Jesus preached the gospel of the kingdom solely to the lost sheep of the house of Israel during his earthly ministry. This angel, at the correct time, will preach the everlasting gospel, which is the proper message for that particular time period.

Today we preach the gospel of the grace of God, which was given to the apostle Paul by revelation, and which can be clearly seen in 1st Corinthians 15:1-4. Acts 20:24.

The 144,000 witnesses will all preach the gospel of the kingdom as being at hand, just as the apostles were commissioned to do.

**The hour of his judgment is come:** This is a reference to God's judgment against Babylon.

**8 And there followed another angel, saying,**

**Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city, because she made all nations drink of the wine of the wrath of her fornication.**

**Another angel:** The first angel spoke of the good news that people needed to believe to go into their kingdom, while this angel spoke of what would happen to those who did not believe.

**The wine of the wrath of her fornication:** Wine is used to intoxicate someone into doing something they would not normally do if they were sober.

Babylon has gotten all nations to become intoxicated with her wine, which was spiritual fornication, that would cause the nations to commit spiritual adultery by departing from God, and worshipping false gods.

**9 And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice,**

**If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, 10 The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb:**

**The third angel:** This is the angel of the church of Pergamos, which could mean that the two preceding angels were the angels of the first two churches mentioned in Revelation two.

The world will still a few people left at this time in the tribulation period that have not yet chosen Christ, nor have received the mark of the beast.

**Which is poured out without mixture:** His wrath will not be diluted, or softened any.

**The cup of his indignation:** Cups are often used prophetically to describe spiritual things related to suffering, like in Matthew 20:22.

**He shall be tormented with fire and brimstone:** The place of this torment is in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb. Genesis 19:24, Psalm 11:6, Luke 17:29 & Isaiah 30:33.

**11 And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name.**

**The smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever:** *Isaiah 30:33.*

**12 Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.**

**The patience of the saints:** This is for those Jews in the tribulation period, who will once again keep the commandments of God as they were commanded to do prior to the church age.

During the dispensation of grace today there is no difference between the Jew and Gentile, they are all one in Christ. During the tribulation period, God is dealing with Israel differently than he is dealing with us in the church.

**They that keep the commandments of God:** *1st John 5:2-3.*

**The faith of Jesus:** They believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God. *1st John 5:4-5.*

**13 And I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them.**

**They may rest from their labours:** Their labours are the struggles they face. *Revelation 2:2-3.*

**Their works do follow them:** The tribulation saints' works follow them into their kingdom, where they receive a reward.

*Revelation 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.*

#### A Sharp Sickle

**14 And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle.**

**A white cloud:** This is the only time the color white is associated with a cloud in the Bible, because of the person who is sitting upon it.

**Upon the cloud one sat:** Christ is seen as sitting here, because the Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people according to *Isaiah 3:13.*

The time to plead will be over, while the time to judge will be just ahead when he will stand up, to mount his white horse, and return.

*Isaiah 3:13 The LORD standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.*

**Like unto the Son of man:** A title of Christ found in the gospels (especially Luke's gospel) and in *Ezekiel 93* times.

**On his head a golden crown:** Christ is seated on a white cloud to receive the 144,000 unto himself. He is not standing because he is not judging Israel yet. *Isaiah 3:13.*

**In his hand a sharp sickle:** This is the reaping that takes place at the end of the tribulation period, that is not the rapture of the church, which is Christ's body.

Those who mix up Israel and the church, almost all eventually start to teach that they will go through the tribulation period, because they do not understand how to rightly divide the word of truth. *2nd Timothy 2:15.*

I believe the Philadelphian church mentioned in chapter three will be involved in this tribulation rapture of mostly Jewish believers.

The body of Christ, however, has been in heaven for many years already at this point, and does not go through any of the tribulation. We have not been appointed unto wrath:

*1st Thessalonians 5:9 For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ,*

**15 And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud,**

**Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe.**

**Him that sat on the cloud:** This is now the second of three times in all of the Bible that someone is said to be sitting on a cloud.

The previous time is in the previous verse, and the final one is in the next verse. Three times helps us to remember that Jesus was not standing, yet. *Isaiah 3:13* above.

**16 And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped.**

**He that sat on the cloud:** Three times in three consecutive verses John emphasizes that Christ was sitting, and not standing. His posture changing has a purpose.

**17 And another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle.**

**Another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle:** Two angels with sharp sickles reaping one after the other, why?

Why not at the same time? The reaping was to take place over seven weeks (the feast of weeks) and culminate at Pentecost. The first angel (Jesus) gathers the Firstfruits (the 144,000), the second angel gathers the chaff. *Leviticus 23:10-20.*

**18 And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying,**

**Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are fully ripe.**

**Another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire:** Possibly the fourth angel in *Revelation 16:8.*

**The clusters of the vine of the earth:** They are the fruit on the vine. *1st Samuel 25:18* & the *Song of Solomon 7:7-8.*

**19 And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God.**

**The vine of the earth:** All the bad fruit that is to be destroyed.

**The great winepress of the wrath of God:** The winepress was meant for wine, but if Israel would not produce good fruit in the vineyard that God gave to them, then he will reap them, and cast them into a winepress of his wrath.

These are the chaff spoken of in *Matthew 3:12* that are cast into the fire and burned (tormented).

**20 And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.**

**The winepress was trodden without the city:** The city is Jerusalem, but the winepress is throughout the land, and without the city.

**And blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles:** This is how high the blood splatters from the ground upwards. *Isaiah 63:3* below.

**By the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs:** 80 miles in length, which covers a lot of central Israel.

#### God's Vineyard is Israel

*Isaiah 5:1 Now will I sing to my wellbeloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My wellbeloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill: 2 And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein: and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes. 3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard. 4 What could have been done more to my vineyard, that I have not done in it? wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes, brought it forth wild grapes? 5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down: 6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it. 7 For the vineyard of the LORD of hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant: and he looked for judgment, but behold oppression; for righteousness, but behold a cry.*

#### I have trodden the winepress alone

*Isaiah 63:1 Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save. 2 Wherefore art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat? 3 I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment. 4 For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. 5 And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me. 6 And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.*

### Chapter Fifteen

#### Another sign in heaven

**1 And I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvellous, seven angels having the seven last plagues; for in them is filled up the wrath of God.**

**Another sign in heaven:** The previous sign is found in Revelation 12:1-4. The man child.

**Great and marvellous:** This term is used here, and in verse three just two verses later as part of the song of Moses which connects these sayings.

**Seven angels:** The seven angels are the great and marvelous sign mentioned in verse one.

**Seven last plagues:** They begin to be poured out in chapter 16.

**2 And I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and**

**over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God.**

**As it were a sea of glass mingled with fire:** It looked like a sea of glass. Revelation 4:6.

**Mingled with fire:** Exodus 9:2 4 & Revelation 8:7.

**Them that had gotten the victory over the beast:** These are tribulation saints, not us. The beast is the antichrist. Revelation 11:7.

**His image:** An image of the antichrist for people to worship. Revelation 13:14.

**His mark:** The mark of the beast in Revelation 13:16-18.

**The number of his name:** *Revelation 13:17.*

**Stand on the sea of glass:** Which tells you it is not a normal sea. The sea was like unto crystal. Revelation 4:6.

**The harps of God:** The tribulation saints will stand on the "crystal" sea with the harps of God, and they will be singing. Revelation 5:8. David established 24 courses of priests. Some played harps: 2nd Samuel 6:5 & 1st Chronicles 15:16.

**3 And they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying,**

**Great and marvellous are thy works, Lord God Almighty; just and true are thy ways, thou King of saints. 4 Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name? for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.**

**The song of Moses:** This is found in Deuteronomy 32:1-43.

**5 And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened:**

**The temple of the tabernacle of the testimony:** The tabernacle of the testimony is speaking about the ark of the covenant, which is the place that houses the ark where the tablets of the testament reside.

**6 And the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and having their breasts girded with golden girdles.**

**The seven angels:** These are the same angels mentioned as before. They are the messengers to the seven churches of chapters two and three.

**The seven plagues:** All are found in Revelation 16:1-21.

**Clothed in pure and white linen:** Jesus, these angels, and all the tribulation saints will be arrayed in white garments, but only Jesus and the angels will have their breasts girded with golden girdles.

**7 And one of the four beasts gave unto the seven angels seven golden vials full of the wrath of God, who liveth for ever and ever.**

**The four beasts:** Seraphim in Isaiah 6:1-3.

**The seven angels:** These are the seven angels that served as messengers to the seven churches in Asia in chapters two and three.

**Seven golden vials:** The seven last plagues full of the wrath of God, as seen in the next chapters.

**8 And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power; and no man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled.**

**The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God:** This also happened in Isaiah's day when he saw the lord sitting on the throne in the temple in heaven, and the house was filled with smoke. Isaiah 6:1-4.

**No man was able to enter into the temple, till the seven plagues of the seven angels were fulfilled:** These begin to be poured out beginning in chapter sixteen.

### Chapter Sixteen

#### The vials of the wrath of God

**1 And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels,**

**Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth.**

**The seven angels:** These are the angels of the seven churches of Asia found in Revelation chapters two and three.

**The vials of the wrath of God:** These are poured out in seven different places. Upon the earth, upon the Sea, upon the rivers, and fountains of water, upon the Sun, upon the seat of the beast, upon the great river Euphrates, and into the air.

**2 And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.**

**The first went:** This is the first angel identified as the angel of the church of Ephesus.

**And poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore:** Like an ulcer. Revelation 16:11.

**The men which had the mark of the beast:** The sore falls only upon those who have the mark of the beast, his political supporters. Revelation 13:16-18.

God supernaturally protects those in the tribulation period who worship him, just as he promised he would in Mark 16:15-18.

**Them which worshipped his image:** This vial tormented his religious followers as well.

**3 And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea.**

**The second angel:** This is the angel of the church of Sardis.

**Upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead man:** This vial destroys one of mankind's best sources of provision in order to judge this Christ rejecting world.

The blood of a dead man coagulates. Just like the punishment upon Egypt prior to Israel's Exodus, the sea turns to blood and everything in it dies, but God's people can drink poisonous things. Mark 16:18.

**4 And the third angel poured out his vial upon the rivers and fountains of waters; and they became blood.**

**The third angel:** This is the angel of the church of Pergamos.

**Upon the rivers and the fountains of waters:** Once again God is slowly closing down man's abilities to fend for himself by poisoning the water supply, and yet man does not turn to God.

The water becomes poisonous for men to drink, but what promise is given to believers in Mark 16:15-18? If they drink any deadly thing it will not hurt them.

This is not so under our dispensation today, but only for believing Israel under the gospel of the kingdom message, and only when the kingdom is at hand as it will be in the tribulation period. Matthew 24:14.

**5 And I heard the angel of the waters say,**

**Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus. 6 For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy.**

**Thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy:** Exodus 7:17-25.

**7 And I heard another out of the altar say,**

**Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are thy judgments.**

**I heard another out of the altar:** Another Angel. Revelation 8:3-5 & 14:18.

**8 And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire.**

**The fourth angel:** This is the angel of the church in Thyatira.

**Upon the sun:** Intense heat surrounds the earth as God seeks to get men's attention because they resisted the 144,000 witnesses, as well as the two witness' testimony previously, and now they even begin to blaspheme God.

They are getting a little taste of what is ahead for them in hell.

**9 And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory.**

**And blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues:** This is possibly them using Jesus' name blasphemously.

**10 And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain, 11 And blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.**

**The fifth angel:** This is the angel of the church of Smyrna.

**Upon the seat of the beast:** Satan wants Jerusalem more than any other city, and Paul tells us that he will sit in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

We do know that the beast rules over a ten-nation kingdom, and we learned in chapter three that Satan's seat will be in Pergamos initially. 2nd Thessalonians 2:3-4.

**And his kingdom was full of darkness:** The ninth plague in Egypt was a plague of darkness that lasted three days. Egypt did nothing because the darkness was so thick.

They could not see a thing, but the children of Israel had light in their dwellings. The same thing will happen again here for the believing remnant during this time. Exodus 10:21-23.

**They gnawed their tongues for pain:** The only thing they had to do during those three days was to endure the constant thirst from the lack of clean water, and the pain from the heat, and the grievous sores sent by the angels from the vials of God's wrath.

**12 And the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared.**

**The sixth angel:** This is the angel of the church of Philadelphia.

**Poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates, and the water thereof was dried up:** A similar thing was said by Rahab the harlot about the children of Israel crossing the Red sea. Joshua 2:10.

**That the way of the kings of the east might be prepared:** The kings of the east (modern day Asia) will launch an all-out attack.

Of course, the goal spiritually is for Satan to destroy Israel, which is now in captivity, but he will try for domination of the whole region, and every victory he enjoys will be short lived.

**13 And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. 14 For they are the spirits of devils, working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty.**

**Three unclean spirits like frogs:** The Satanic trinity will seek to destroy as much life as possible in one final battle in which all the armies of the world will meet to destroy these invaders from the East.

**The spirit of devils, working miracles:** The satanic trinity mentioned above can also do signs and wonders to such a level that kings of the earth will wonder after them and follow them into battle, and ultimately to their deaths.

#### A parenthetical warning

**15 Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame.**

**I come as a thief:** God admonishes the saints that remain during the tribulation period to watch and to keep their garments.

This implies there is a responsibility to this class of believers to keep their garments that is never said to anyone ever in church age. Matthew 24:36-51, 1st Thessalonians 5:2-4, 1st Peter 3:10, Revelation 3:3 and 6:12.

**Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments:** They keep them unspotted by resting temptation. Revelation 3:4 & 3:18 below:

*Revelation 3:18 I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*

**Lest he walk naked, and they see his shame:** What happened to Adam and Eve when they did not obey God? They were naked and were ashamed. See Genesis 2:25.

**16 And he gathered them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon.**

**Armageddon:** This is the world's most perfect battlefield, and it has been the host of many of the world's battles.

Satan's Army will be utterly destroyed here with no casualties on God's side. This is the valley at the center of the world where three continents come together.

**17 And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying,**

**It is done.**

**The seventh angel:** This is the angel of the church of Laodicea.

**Poured out his vial into the air:** It is mentioned in verse 21 as the plague of hail.

**It is done:** These three words are used together seven times, six are in the book of the Revelation.

Five of the times this saying is used to describe God speaking, the other two times it was used about God. Deuteronomy 5:22, Revelation 1:10, 11:12, 16:1. 19:1 & 21:3.

**18 And there were voices, and thunders, and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great.**

Babylon, Mystery Babylon, and all of those that have ever lifted their hand against the Lord and his anointed, shall pay for their rebellion.

**There were voices, and thunders, and lightnings:** This is now the fourth time these three words are used together. A pattern has been developing with them that we need to see. Exodus 19, Revelation 4:5, 8:5 & 11:19.

**There was a great earthquake:** The great city is rebuilt Babylon, and it is prophesied to be destroyed by God in Jeremiah 49-50. Isaiah 2:19-22 & Revelation 6:12.

*Isaiah 2:19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth. 20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made each one for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats; 21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.*

**19 And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon**

**came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath.**

This verse can be confusing if you do not read it slowly, first it speaks of Jerusalem (the great city), then all the cities of the nations, then great Babylon. The two greats are not the same city.

**The great city was divided into three parts:** This great city is Jerusalem. God's city.

**And great Babylon came in remembrance before God:** The great "notorious" city of Babylon, Satan's city.

**The cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath:** *Revelation 14:10.*

**20 And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found.** *Revelation 6:14.*

**21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great.**

**The weight of a talent:** A hundred pounds. Exodus 9:18.

## Chapter Seventeen

### The great whore

**1 And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me,**

**Come hither; I will show unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters:**

**One of the seven angels:** One of the seven angels that were originally sent as messengers to the seven churches of Asia.

**Come hither:** These words are not the same as when it says "come up hither" in Revelation 4:1 & 11:12. They are also totally different Greek words. They just mean come here. Revelation 21:9.

**The judgment of the great whore:** There is a judgment day coming for this great whore.

Just what exactly is this great whore that the Bible speaks about, and what are the characteristics that make up this whore? First, we know gender wise, a whore is a woman.

*Leviticus 19:29 Do not prostitute thy daughter, to cause her to be a whore; lest the land fall to whoredom and the land become full of wickedness.*

*Hebrews 13:4 Marriage is honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.*

This great whore has feminine "characteristics" attributed to her, but she is not an actual woman. She is an institution.

We also know that a whore is someone who is loose with her body. She does whatever brings pleasure, or capital gain to herself, without regard to the consequences.

A virgin, however, will save herself for her future husband so that she may present herself to him as a chaste virgin. A whore on the other hand does with her body that which was not intended for it by her Creator.

This whorish woman lures the masses to commit spiritual adultery by taking people away from the true worship of God to a counterfeit one.

**That sitteth upon many waters:** Jeremiah 51:13 and surrounding verses.

**2 With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication.**

**The kings of the earth have committed fornication:** This fornication is not a physical union between a man and woman, but a spiritual union between herself and others (i.e., the kings of the earth).

The Kings of the earth represent the governments which offer financial benefits to this whore in exchange for her agreement not to get involved in political issues.

It is bribe money to keep her silent, as well as money to purchase her support come election time. This woman, which is represented here as a whore, is a spiritual body (a church). This is not Christ's church; it is Satan's church.

Mystery Babylon is more than an apostate church; it is the Babylonian mystery religion which worships Baal. Once the true church is raptured any light that remained in those churches will be wholly given over to Baal worship.

There are those today who worship Christ and unknowingly have elements of Baal worship in their practices.

When Satan deceives the world, he tells them that he is the one they have been praying to and serving. Everything that God has, Satan attempts to counterfeit. (Satan also has his own Bibles, and his own saviours:

*2nd Corinthians 11:14 And no marvel for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. 15 Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.*

This false church represented by a whore gives the kings of the earth whatever pleases them (silence on political issues) in exchange for financial enumeration.

The Bible also says in verse one that this church (Satan's church), sits on many waters. Many churches believe in the unity of church and State, and they are definitely committing spiritual fornication as far as the Word of God is concerned.

**The inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication:** Revelation 14:8-10, 16:19 & 18:3.

**3 So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns.**

**He carried me away in the spirit:** Ezekiel 37:1, Revelations 1:10 & 21:10.

**Into the wilderness:** The wilderness is always a desert place in the Bible, uninhabited like modern day Babylon. This actual city was recently rebuilt, but it is uninhabited currently.

It could begin to be inhabited at any time given the situation. It could also mean that it is surrounded by the desert as well.

**A woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast:** A religious whore in collusion with a political power, a union of ten nations that all want to kill Jewish believers in the end times.

**Full of the names of blasphemy:** Any number of false religions that deny that Jesus is the Christ will be guilty of this sin.

**Have seven heads and ten horns:** Seven world leaders (six former ones) and ten current kings that all pledge their allegiance to the seventh world leader.

John saw this woman, the false worldwide religious system, sitting upon a scarlet-colored beast, the political system that will be ruled by the antichrist, and it is full of the names of blasphemy.

The secular world leaders have no place for religion, and will use this whore as long as it serves their purpose. When the time is right to attempt to establish a secular world order, one without a church to dictate what it can and cannot do, they will gladly let it be destroyed.

Also, in verse three it says that this beast has seven heads (world leaders of different ages) and ten horns (ten nations). It will be made up of a conglomeration of ten countries possibly from the nations surrounding Israel.

**4 And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication:**

**Purple and scarlet colour:** The official colors of this whore are purple and scarlet. What is her sin that is mentioned here?

She is in bed with the State. When a church gets in bed with the State it is not far down the road before it compromises its doctrinal stand.

The colors themselves are first found in the tabernacle in the wilderness along with two other colors, so their colors have religious meanings behind them.

The fact that half of the colors are missing tells you that it is religious in nature, but the two entities are not the same.

**Decked with gold and precious stones and pearls:** This woman is filthy rich because of her followers.

**A golden cup in her hand:** Is identified by the prophet Jeremiah: *Jeremiah 51:7 Babylon hath been a golden cup in the LORD'S hand, that made all the earth drunken: the nations have drunken of her wine; therefore the nations are mad.*

**5 And upon her forehead was a name written, Mystery, Babylon the Great, The Mother of Harlots and Abominations of the Earth.**

**Upon her forehead was a name written:** *Revelation 14:1.*

**Mystery, Babylon the Great:** What is the mystery?

Simple, this Babylon is not the same Babylon that once ruled the world. It is another Babylon, a mystery Babylon. It is similar in some respects with the original Babylon, but it is not located in ancient Iraq. Its location is mentioned later on.

**The mother of harlots:** She has given birth to numerous daughters who themselves pervert the truth of God and cause those who follow them to commit spiritual adultery by worshipping as they want you to worship, which is adultery in God's eyes.

**Abominations of the Earth:** The Canaanites committed many abominations, which were sexual in nature, and they were dispossessed of the land for defiling it. *Leviticus 18:26-29.*

This whore in the end times will be in favor of many perversions in spiritual and carnal ways, and will encourage others under her influence to do them as well with the wine of her fornications.

Verse two also says "the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication". Wine is used to get you to do something you would not normally do.

This great whore (false church) has to use something that appeals to their flesh to entice the inhabitants of the earth to commit fornication with her.

God has given a woman everything she needs to attract a man, but a harlot has lost those things which attract a spiritual man, i.e., her modesty, meekness, and her virginity.

When a woman does not have these qualities anymore, she has to resort to other methods to seduce her victims. The wine referred to here is money.

The true church (the body of Christ) does not need the government to prop it up because it is standing on a solid foundation, the Lord Jesus Christ.

**6 And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration.**

**The woman drunken with the blood of the saints:** This is the blood of Jewish and Gentile believers in Jesus for the last 2,000 years represented by the saints who are persecuted by the antichrist, the political powers supporting the religious whore.

**The blood of the martyrs of Jesus:** This is the blood of the believers who stand up to the wicked state church ran by the false prophet.

**7 And the angel said unto me,**

**Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns.**

**The mystery of the woman:** The whore mentioned above is the religious system led by the false prophet at that time.

**The beast that carrieth her:** The beast has seven heads. The political ruler and his government and armies that are at the disposal of the woman (the great whore).

**Which hath seven heads and ten horns:** The heads are described as the seven mountains on which she sits, while the ten horns are ten kings that give their power to the beast (antichrist).

**8 The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.**

**The beast that thou sawest was:** The beast is alive on the earth for three and one-half years. The first half of the tribulation period. He is called the man of sin at this time.

**And is not:** At the moment this angel is speaking to John he says in the present tense that the beast "is not."

That means at that moment the beast (antichrist) was dead, which occurs when he is struck with a sword according to the prophet Zechariah:

*Zechariah 11:17 Woe to the idol shepherd that leaveth the flock! the sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye: his arm*

*shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened.*

**And shall ascend:** The beast (the antichrist) ascends out of the bottomless pit at the moment the dragon (Satan) is cast down from heaven and opens the pit to release his army of locusts.

More importantly to resurrect the man of sin (the antichrist) and make him the Son of perdition. 2nd Thessalonians 2:3.

**The bottomless pit:** An Abyss. It is the place where locust come from to torment all those on the earth that are not sealed with the seal of God. Revelation 9:1-11.

They have a king over them, who is the angel of the pit (Satan, who is the great red dragon in Revelation 12:3).

It is the place where Satan will be bound for a thousand years until the end of the kingdom when he shall be loosed for a season to deceive the nations for the last time for a season. Revelation 11:7, 20:1-3.

**Go into perdition:** Both Judas and Satan are called “the son of perdition” in scripture.

It is possible that Satan could use a dead man in similar fashion as God uses Elijah, and Moses during those same days, because there is a biblical precedence for it. John 17:12.

**The book of life from the foundation of the world:** There are people in verse eight who are mentioned who at no time in their life had ever placed their trust in Jesus as their Messiah and their name then was never written in the book of life.

**The beast that was, and is not, and yet is:** Note the similarity with Jesus in Revelation 1:8.

**9 And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth. 10 And there are seven kings; five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.**

**The seven heads:** They are seven world governments, and their leaders. Five are fallen, one fell (Rome) later, and the seventh is yet to come.

Many believe this seventh to be either the European Community, and its end time leader, or a revived Grecian kingdom once ruled by Alexander the Great, but now made up of mostly of the Muslims nations around Israel.

That kingdom was divided into four kingdoms because Alexander left no heir to the Empire. This whore will definitely play a major role in the persecution of the true believers during the tribulation period.

Many end time churches will drop their differences and unite because of the signs and wonders that they see performed by the beast and the false prophet.

**One is:** This one that is, was there at the time of John’s writing the book of the Revelation. It was the Roman Empire.

**The other is yet to come:** The end-time government of the antichrist.

**A short space:** This will only last seven years.

**Seven mountains:** Mountains are referred to prophetically as kingdoms in numerous places in the scriptures. Daniel 2:31-45.

**11 And the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition.**

**12 And the ten horns which though sawest are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast.**

**He is the eighth:** He was the seventh, but he was killed by a sword at the mid-point of the tribulation period.

Immediately after the dragon was cast out of heaven with the key of the bottomless pit, he resurrects him and he becomes the eighth world ruler as well, but now totally possessed by Satan himself.

**The ten horns:** Ten kings. See in Esther the story of Haman’s ten sons. Types of the antichrist who wants to destroy Jews that are believers, and he has ten sons who eventually are destroyed, as the ten rulers with the antichrist will be.

**13 These have one mind, and shall give their power and strength unto the beast.**

**These have one mind:** The ten kings of verse 12.

**14 These shall make war with the lamb, and the lamb shall overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and they that are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful.**

**The lamb:** Is the Lamb from earlier. The leader of this confederation comes from the seventh kingdom, and since he is called the Assyrian, that would mean he comes out of the Grecian Empire once ruled by Alexander.

The ten horns represent the final form of this large union of nations which pledge their allegiance to the beast system, and its leader. They shall surrender their sovereignty over to the beast to make it the world's most powerful organization.

Note that this conglomeration does not control the whole world. Numerous nations rise up against it, the Russians, armies of the East, according to prophecy; they are just the major players in the world at that time.

**The Lord of lords, and King of kings:** He is the one who is the rightful heir to rule both the heavens and the earth.

Kings are similar, but different than lords. Jesus is both, overall, in every way. The word Lord means a master, and king means a sovereign.

**They that are with him:** These are those Jews in the tribulation period that believe that Jesus is Christ, the Son of the living God and who endure unto the end.

**Called:** Those who are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. Revelation 19:9.

**Chosen:** This is the word Elektos in the Greek. They are not elected to salvation, but chosen to rule and reign with him in the kingdom, because they endured unto the end (they were faithful).

**Faithful:** Faithful unto death. Revelation 2:10.

**15 And he saith unto me,**

**The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues.**

**The waters:** They represent the world. The beast (the world political leader) is none other than Satan incarnate (The devil in human flesh), a third part of a Satanic Trinity.



According to verse eight because it says that this beast shall ascend out of the bottomless pit and go into perdition (the Lake of Fire), and we know because of the verses in Revelation 19:20:

**20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into the lake of fire burning with brimstone.**

Mystery, Babylon the Great which we determined to be the religious system of the antichrist will also not be the only type of worship going on during the tribulation period.

There will be every denomination that you see today still operating only under stricter control.

This will not be a problem with all the Christians out of the way after the rapture, because Satan and his associates do not care about the name that is on the door.

They only care that false doctrine is being preached indoors. Some truth is okay with Satan to make it plausible, but there must be just enough error to mislead those who are too busy making money or enjoying life to send them to hell.

In verse sixteen, God allows the beast with its ten kings and kingdoms to turn against the Whore (the false religious system) to destroy it.

**16 And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.**

**The ten horns:** They hate the whore, and eventually attack the whore (that great city, Mystery, Babylon the great, the mother of harlots) and make her desolate.

**The beast:** The antichrist. Revelation 11:7.

**17 For God hath put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.**

**Their hearts:** The ten horns who agree to give their kingdom to the antichrist (the beast). Verse eighteen further identifies the whore.

It is definitely referring to the city that rules kings in a religious sense, and that would be Babylon, where Satan will undoubtedly rule from.

**18 And the woman which thou sawest is that great city, which reigneth over the kings of the earth.**

**The woman:** That great city, as we saw earlier, was a reference to Babylon. There are today different cities that could be candidates to be Mystery Babylon because they have many characteristics of Baal worship.

**That great city:** Many cities can be said to be ones that have reigned over the kings of the earth, either religiously or politically.

This city is mentioned in the present tense as one that is reigning at the time at which the events of this book are unfolding, but the words seem to also imply that this city has been reigning over the kings of the earth for a very long time.

### Babylon the Great is fallen

**1 And after these things I saw another angel come down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory.**

**I saw another angel come down from heaven:** This angel (messenger) is the Lord Jesus Christ, coming as the messenger of God, announcing the destruction of God's enemy.

Jesus is not an angelic being, but he often appears as the angel (messenger) of the Lord throughout scripture. The word angel means messenger.

**The earth was lightened with his glory:** No angel could light anything with their own glory. Numbers 14:21, & Psalm 72:19.

**2 And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and cage of every unclean and hateful bird.**

If Babylon fell, then it fell from a place where it originally belonged, until the devils and the foul spirits started to inhabit her.

**And cage of every unclean and hateful bird:** Birds are often used to symbolize devils in the Bible, like in the parable of the sower:

*Matthew 13:3 And he spake many things unto them in parables, saying, Behold, a sower went forth to sow; 4 And when he sowed, some seeds fell by the way side, and the fowls came and devoured them up:*

*Matthew 13:19 When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth it not, then cometh the wicked one, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side.*

**3 For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies.**

**4 And I heard another voice from heaven, saying,**

**Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her**

**5 For her sins have reached unto heaven, and God hath remembered her iniquities.**

**Come out of her, my people:** This brings us to a better understanding of who Babylon the great is by the voice from heaven commanding God's people to come out of her.

I believe this is much more than just a nation, but a religious system, which has corrupted God's word, and killed its ministers.

Imagine a church without Jesus, because Satan will tell the world Jesus was not their deliverer, but that he is. If you throw out Jesus and what little they have right and put the antichrist in his place, you have pure Baal worship.

When the rapture happens, and Satan causes all to follow after him instead of Jesus, they will return to their original form of pure Baal worship.

**6 Reward her even as she rewarded you, and double unto her double according to her works: in the cup which she hath filled fill to her double.**

**According to her works:** These works are the damning of billions of souls to hell and killing those that have stood up to her over the centuries.

This is the works of this mystery Babylon, she is a chameleon that changes in whatever culture she finds herself in, to intoxicate that culture into some form of Babylonian mystery religion.

**In the cup which she hath filled:** God instructs his angels to attack this whorish system, in retaliation for the treatment she has dished out over her history.

**7 How much she hath glorified herself, and lived deliciously, so much torment and sorrow give her: for she saith in her heart,**

**I sit a queen, and am no widow, and shall see no sorrow.**

Jeremiah 7:18 & 44:17-25. Also compare this with the words of the prophet Zephaniah:

*Zephaniah 2:15 This is the rejoicing city that dwelt carelessly, that said in her heart, I am, and there is none beside me: how is she become a desolation, a place for beasts to lie down in! every one that passeth by her shall hiss, and wag his hand.*

**8 Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her. 9 And the kings of the earth, who have committed fornication and lived deliciously with her, shall bewail her, and lament for her, when they shall see the smoke of her burnings, 10 Standing afar off for the fear of her torment, saying,**

**Alas, alas, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! for in one hour is thy judgement come.**

**In one day:** Gulf war one was only four days, but it was nothing close to this event when God judges his enemy.

**In one hour:** Only God can cause such an abrupt end as this.

**11 And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more:**

This is possibly rebuilt Babylon. We can be confused easily by not remembering that there is a religious Babylon as well as a commercial Babylon. To force one to be both will lead to confusion.

**12 The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and pearls, and fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet, and all thyine wood, and all manner vessels of ivory, and all manner vessels of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble, 13 And cinnamon, and odours, and ointments, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and slaves, and souls of**

**men. 14 And the fruits that thy soul lusted after are departed from thee, and all things which were dainty and goodly are departed from thee, and thou shalt find them no more at all.**

Imagine the nations of the world uniting under one political, and religious leader, and what power he would hold. We are moving very quickly in that direction today.

**15 The merchants of these things, which were made rich by her, shall stand afar off for the fear of her torment, weeping and wailing, 16 And saying,**

**Alas, alas, that great city, that was clothed in fine linen, and purple, and scarlet, and decked with gold, and precious stones, and pearls!**

**17 For in one hour so great riches is come to nought. And every shipmaster, and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off, 18 And cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying,**

**What city is like unto this great city?**

This sounds like an attack which dwarfs the events of 9/11 dramatically. This is God's judgment on his enemies, not one enemy against another.

**19 And they cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping and wailing, saying,**

**Alas, alas, that great city, wherein were made rich all that had ships in the sea by reason of her costliness! for in one hour is she made desolate. 20 Rejoice over her, thou heaven, and ye holy apostles and prophets, for God hath avenged you on her.**

They will rejoice on that day because the devil's system that has destroyed multiple billions of souls in hell will itself be destroyed. That is what is being rejoiced over.

On this day, the deceiver that is the cause of most of the world's suffering will be put out of business and that will be something to rejoice about.

**21 And a mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying,**

**Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all in thee; 22 And the voice of the harpers, and the musicians, and of pipers, and trumpeters, shall be heard no more at all in thee; and no craftsman, of whatsoever craft he be, shall be found any more in thee; and the sound of a millstone shall be heard no more at all in thee;**

**A mighty angel:** *Revelation 10:1.*

**A great millstone:** The great city Babylon is where musicians come to play, and craftsman come to make it rich.

If Babylon itself, which is near the sea, is ever re-inhabited, could it ever match what other major cities have become? It is still uninhabited due to the recent wars there.

*Matthew 18:6 But whoso shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better for him that a millstone were hanged about his neck, and that he were drowned in the depth of the sea.*

**That great city Babylon:** Satan has his great city, Babylon, because God has his, Jerusalem.

**23 And the light of a candle shall shine no more at all in thee; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in thee: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived.**

**For by thy sorceries were all nations deceived:** This city has influenced all the nations with her religious sorceries which deceived them into believing a lie, and condemned them to an eternity in hell.

**24 And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of the saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth.**

**In her was found the blood of prophets, and of the saints:** In this chapter we have discovered the identity of Mystery, Babylon the Great the Mother of Harlots, it is false religion.

#### Chapter Nineteen The Marriage Supper

**1 And after these things I heard a great voice of much people in heaven, saying,**

**Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God:**

**After these things:** The destruction of Babylon in chapter eighteen.

**I great voice of much people in heaven:** These are those who are saved in the tribulation period.

**Alleluia:** This is the only chapter in the whole Bible where the Hebrew word Hallelujah is used. It is used four times. It means "praise the Lord."

It is the Hebrew word that means praise Yah, short for Yah-WeH, or the name of God, but it is not translated as such from the Greek, but it is rather transliterated.

It is said four times in a chapter that describes the awfulness of the battle of Armageddon. This tells us that God, and his saints in heaven have the proper perspective about what is really going to transpire on that day.

Whereas we may see the horrendous loss of life, the saints in heaven see God avenging the deaths of millions of martyrs and ending the works of the devil for the next thousand years.

**2 For true and righteous are his judgments: for he hath judged the great whore, which did corrupt the earth with her fornication, and hath avenged the blood of his servants at her hand.**

**For true and righteous are his judgments:** What judgments? The slaughter of his enemies.

**The great whore:** *Revelation 17:15.*

**His servants:** The Jewish believer in Jesus. Millions of true believers have been martyred and will be for their faith at the

hands of this whore who is a religious whore deceiving the nations that pledged allegiance to her.

**3 And again they said,**

**Alleluia, and her smoke rose up for ever and ever:**

**And her smoke rose up for ever and ever:** This is the smoke of the great whore mentioned in Revelation 18:9.

**4 And the four and twenty elders and the four beasts fell down and worshipped God that sat on the throne, saying,**

**Amen; Alleluia.**

**The four and twenty elders:** Revelation 4:5, 10, 5:8, 14, 11:16, & 19:4.

**The four beasts:** The Seraphim. Isaiah 6:1-3.

**5 And a voice came out of the throne, saying,**

**Praise our God, all ye his servants, and ye that fear him, both small and great.**

**Praise our God:** This is English for Alleluia.

**All ye his servants:** These are Jewish believers.

**And ye that fear him:** These are Gentile believers that bless Israel. Genesis 12:1-3.

**6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying,**

**The voice of a great multitude:** *Daniel 10:6 & Luke 19:37.*

**The voice of many waters:** Psalm 29:3, Jeremiah 10:13, 51:16, Ezekiel 1:24, Revelation 14:2 & 19:6.

**As the voice of mighty thunderings:** Revelation 4:5, 8:5 & 11:19.

**Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth. 7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.**

**Alleluia:** Praise the Lord is proclaimed for the fifth time, once in English.

**Omnipotent:** All powerful.

**The marriage of the Lamb is come:** The Lamb is Jesus, and his wife is believing Israel.

**His wife hath made herself ready:** Jesus' wife made herself ready by enduring unto the end and obeying the commandments of the Lord.

*Luke 1:17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.*

**8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.**

**Fine linen, clean and white:** It is the reward given by God for Israel's obedience to the commandments of God. Daniel 12:10, Revelation 3:5, 18 & 19:14.

**9 And he saith unto me,**

**Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb.**

**And he saith unto me,**

**These are the true sayings of God.**

**Blessed are they which are called unto the Marriage supper of the Lamb:** This is between the Lamb (Jesus Christ), and his wife, who is no longer his bride, because the wedding has already taken place.

The Lamb's wife is believing Israel as Revelation 21:9 tells us that it is the inhabitants of the city new Jerusalem are Jewish.

*Revelation 19:17 And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God; \* The parable of the great supper in Luke 14:16.*

**10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me,**

**See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.**

**And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not:** We are to bow before Jesus alone.

**I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren:** A believer, and a Jew.

**That have the testimony of Jesus:** Which is the spirit of prophecy. Notice also how this person identifies himself. He said that he was a fellow servant and of thy brethren (a Jew), and that he had the testimony of Jesus, which is the spirit of prophecy.

**The spirit of prophecy:** This is the ability of a believer to understand this book and rightly divide it instead of spiritualizing it. No lost religious person can do that because he refuses to open his eyes to God's word. It will soon be too late.

#### The second advent

**11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.**

**I saw heaven opened:** Here we see heaven opened for the second time in the book of the Revelation.

The first time was to let John see in, in chapter four. Many wrongly teach in verse one of chapter four that that is a picture of the church being raptured. The church has to be raptured before Revelation 1:1.

The churches in chapters two and three are not churches in the dispensation of grace, they are tribulation churches.

Their doctrine is identical to what Jesus taught in the gospels, and especially Matthew chapters twenty-four and twenty-five, when Jesus was telling Israel about enduring unto the end of the tribulation period to enter into their kingdom.

This is not doctrine for us today in the body of Christ. Our doctrine is found in Romans through Philemon, written to us by Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles. Romans 11:13.

**A white horse:** This time heaven is opened for Christ to come down to the battle of Armageddon. Jesus Christ is described here as the rider on a white horse.

**Faithful and True:** Both are titles describing Jesus, and both are capitalized denoting Deity.

**In righteousness he doth judge and make war:** He standeth to plead, before judgment, and he standeth to judge when the time of pleading is done. Revelation 11:7, 12:17, 13:4, 7, 19:11 & 19.

**12 His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. 13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.**

**His eyes were as a flame of fire:** Revelation 1:14, 2:18, Exodus 3:2, Acts 7:30, & Hebrews 1:7.

**On his head were many crowns:** This is the Greek word Diadem which is different from the Stephanos crown of Revelation six.

Just imagine the look in the eyes of God's enemies on that day as they see Jesus returning to earth not as a lamb that had been slaughtered, but as a conquering King with a fierce countenance.

**A name written:** The Word of God.

**He was clothed in a vesture dipped in blood:** This is found in Isaiah's prophecy:

*Isaiah 63:1 Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save. 2 Wherefore art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat? 3 I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment. 4 For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. 5 And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me. 6 And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.*

**14 And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.**

**The armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses:** Not one army, but armies.

**Clothed in fine linen, white and clean:** One army is made up of those who were purified and made their robes white by suffering during the tribulation period.

They are the ones who endured unto the end and resisted taking the mark of the beast. Daniel 12:10, Revelation 3:5, 18 & 19:8.

The other army is the angelic host of the LORD, it is not the church coming back to live on the earth. Our dwelling place is in heavenly places.

**15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the**

**winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.**

**A sharp sword:** Jesus Christ himself will fight with the word of his mouth, and the battle will be over in seconds.

**And shall rule them with a rod of iron:** The reason for ruling with a rod of iron in the kingdom is that all will not willingly obey him at that time, and when they don't the rod will be used on those rebellious nations.

**And he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God:** Isaiah 63:3 says that Christ did this alone.

This is the marriage supper of the Lamb where Israel's enemies are destroyed in front of them, and the fowls of the air eat their flesh, and Israel's kingdom is established.

**16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written,**

**KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.**

Jesus Christ will be KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS forever, so they are not just titles, they are actually part of his name.

**17 And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven,**

**Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God; 18 That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great.**

**An angel standing in the sun:** This may be the fourth angel from Revelation 8:12 & 16:8.

**The fowls that fly in the midst of heaven:** These fowl are prophesied in Ezekiel 39:

*Ezekiel 39:1 Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal: 2 And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause thee to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel: 3 And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand. 4 Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured.*

*Ezekiel 39:17 And, thou son of man, thus saith the Lord GOD; Speak unto every feathered fowl, and to every beast of the field, Assemble yourselves, and come; gather yourselves on every side to my sacrifice that I do sacrifice for you, even a great sacrifice upon the mountains of Israel, that ye may eat flesh, and drink blood. 18 Ye shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the princes of the earth, of rams, of lambs, and of goats, of bullocks, all of them fatlings of Bashan. 19 And ye shall eat fat till ye be full, and drink blood till ye be drunken, of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you. 20 Thus ye shall be filled at my table with horses and chariots, with mighty men, and with all men of war, saith the Lord GOD.*

*Matthew 24:26 Wherefore if they shall say unto you, Behold, he is in the desert; go not forth: behold, he is in the secret chambers; believe it not. 27 For as the lightning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. 28 For wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles be gathered together.*

**The supper of the great God:** In a moment, his foes will be crushed under his feet, and he will be stained in their blood.

**19 And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army.**

**The beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies:** The kings of the earth's armies.

**Him that sat on the horse, and against his army:** Jesus returns with his army of martyred saints, but Jesus does all the fighting with the sword of his mouth.

These are not the saints of all ages, but those that had been killed during the tribulation period. His army is the armies in heaven mentioned above. The angelic host also returns with Christ.

**20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.**

**The beast:** The antichrist was cast alive into a lake of fire.

**The false prophet:** The false prophet was cast alive into a lake of fire.

**The mark of the beast:** They were deceived by the beast and the false prophet.

**These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone:** On this day over 200 million souls will perish and go to a Christ-less eternity in a lake of fire because they choose to believe a lie. Hell has to enlarge itself to receive them. Isaiah 5:14.

**21 And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which sword proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh.**

**The remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse:** They were slain by the word of God, which is a sword. Although their flesh was consumed, their souls will never be consumed, they will be tormented in the lake of fire forever.

**All the fowls were filled with their flesh:** Goliath told David that he would feed David's flesh to the fowls of the air, but God turned it around and the fowls feasted on Goliath instead, as it will be in this day. Psalm 79:2.

## Chapter Twenty

### The First Resurrection

**1 And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the pit and a great chain in his hand.**

**An angel come down from heaven:** This angel came down on his own instead of falling down. This implies that he was a good angel.

This angel in verse one is probably the fifth angel mentioned in Revelation chapter three, because the fifth angel is the angel that had the key of the pit originally in Revelation 9:1. The fifth angel is the angel of the church of Sardis.

**The key of the pit:** The key opens the pit (the bottomless pit), not hell, or the lake of fire. This is to be Satan's place of confinement for the next thousand years. This key is first mentioned in Revelation 9:1.

**A great chain:** Satan is also bound with some sort of supernatural chain, for a thousand years. He will be released then to fight against God's anointed again after that time.

**2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,**

**The Dragon:** Psalm 91:13, Isaiah 27:1, Revelation 12:3, 4, 7, 9, 13, 16, 17, 13:2, 4, 11 & 16:13.

**That old serpent:** Revelation 12:9.

**The Devil:** Used 52 times in the "New Testament."

**Satan:** This title is used 56 times.

**And bound him:** The supernatural chain enabled the fifth angel to bind Satan, without it the fifth angel did not stand a chance.

**A thousand years:** There is going to be a thousand-year period in the future that will be ruled by Christ. Satan will not be able to deceive the nations during this time.

Today, he has the nations of this world deceived because he is the god of this world. 2nd Corinthians 4:4.

**3 And cast him into the pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.**

**And cast him into the pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him:** We know from earlier scriptures that the pit had a key to it. The fifth angel had the key to the pit, but now a seal is set upon Satan himself, a seal from God, that only he could open.

*Isaiah 24:21 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth. 22 And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.*

**After many days shall they be visited:** The host of the high ones (fallen angels) will be released for a season with Satan.

**That he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled:** For 1,000 years Christ will rule over the Gentiles with a rod of iron.

**And after that he must be loosed a little season:** During this little season Satan gets much of the Gentile world to come against God and those who do are destroyed and cast into the lake of fire forever.

This will be mankind's last test to see how every nation, under a perfect world government, with priests sent out to them will respond to the rule of God on the earth.

They will fail miserably according to scripture, and prove that mankind needs God regardless of what environment they are in.

They cannot do it on their own, not even when they had 1,000 years without Satan's influence to corrupt them. It will only take a short season for Satan to get the masses to follow him at that time, and the masses will be destroyed.

**4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.**

**I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them:** Here we see the fulfillment of a promise made by Jesus to his twelve disciples that they would sit on twelve thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel in Matthew 19:28.

**I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God:** This was during the tribulation period, because the body lies in the grave awaiting the resurrection, when the body and soul will be reunited together in immortality.

It is the tribulation saints that have victory over the mark of the beast, that reign with Christ, and live with him here on earth for a thousand years. These are the overcomers mentioned there. Revelations 2:26.

**Which had not worshipped the beast:** The antichrist.

**5 But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.**

**The rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished:** They will be a part of the second death mentioned below.

**The first resurrection:** This resurrection is for all the saints from Adam unto the little flock, this also will be for the martyrs during the tribulation period.

The lost will await their judgment after Satan has been defeated permanently at the end of the kingdom at the great white throne judgment. Revelation 20:11.

**6 Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.**

**On such the second death hath no power:** The lake of fire, Hell and death are cast into the lake of fire. The second death cannot touch anyone involved in the first resurrection. Revelation 2:11, 20:14 & 21:8.

**They shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years:** These tribulation saints will reign with Christ in the kingdom as priests along with all of righteous Israel that believed under the law program, who are also resurrected at this time. Exodus 19:5-6.

This includes the twelve apostles to the nation of Israel. They were not apostles to the body of Christ, Paul was, as the apostle of the Gentiles. Romans 11:13.

**7 And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison,**

**When the thousand years are expired:** This is mentioned six times in relationship to the kingdom.

The world is roughly six thousand years old because the Bible says so. It backs it up with dates and ages from Adam all the way to Christ equaling four thousand years exactly.

And since there have been two thousand years since then, you come up with six thousand years roughly since creation until now, with the millennium of rest which is soon to come.

**Satan shall be loosed out of his prison:** His prison is also called the bottomless pit. Isaiah 24:21-22 above.

**8 And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog, and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea.**

**And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth:** The Gentiles spend a thousand years under the reign of Christ, with his government set up on the earth, and Israel is serving as the kingdom of priests. Exodus 19:5-6.

But at the end of the thousand years of Christ reigning on the earth in perfect righteousness, with Satan and his influence non-existent for all those years, the Gentiles will be faced with a test at that time.

Unfortunately, many will fail and choose to follow Satan at that time, and they will be destroyed. How many of them?

**The number of whom is as the sand of the sea**

**Gog, and Magog:** The scriptures says that Gog and Magog are the nations in the four corners of the earth. Not two cities in Russia. Ezekiel 38:1-39:11.

**9 And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them:**

**They went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints:** *Ezekiel 38:22.*

**The beloved city:** The beloved city of Jerusalem.

**And fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them:** 2nd Kings 1:10-14.

**10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.**

**The lake of fire and brimstone:** First mentioned in the previous chapter as "a lake of fire," it now becomes known as "the lake of fire and brimstone. Being cast into the lake of fire is called the second death. verse 14 below.

**Where the beast and the false prophet are:** They were not destroyed when they were cast into the lake of fire and brimstone.

They, along with the devil, are going to be in there day and night, forever and ever tormented. The beast is the antichrist.

**The great white throne judgment**

**11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.**

**A great white throne:** This is the final judgement for the lost. We are judged at the judgment seat of Christ immediately after the rapture. This judgment occurs at the end of the millennial kingdom.

**Revelation 20:11 And I saw a great white throne, And him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away:**

**Psalm 102:25 Of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the work of thy hands. 26 They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed:**

**Isaiah 34:4 And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll: and all their host shall fall down, as the leaf falleth off from the vine, and as a falling fig from the fig tree.**

**And there was found no place for them:** 2nd Peter 3.

**12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.**

**The books were opened:** Not just one book, but books. People at the great white throne judgment are judged according to their works.

Lost people from the dispensation of grace will be there as well to be judged. There are the people there that are from the kingdom as well as those that are lost throughout all ages.

All people that appear at the judgment seat of Christ are saved, and will be judged for their works that they have done in his body, and for the motives behind them for rewards.

There will not be a soul cast into hell at that judgment because that judgment seat of Christ is for believers only.

What is also true is that there will be both saved and lost people judged at the great white throne judgment because they will not be sent back into time to be judged with the church at the judgment seat of Christ, but must stand before the Judge of the universe as all others.

Unfortunately, the vast majority of attendees at the great white throne will be lost. The book of life will be opened, and those saved in the kingdom will find their names written there.

**And another book was opened:** Under Israel's law program a person could have their name blotted out of the book of life as seen in Revelation 3:5. also Exodus 32:32-3, Deuteronomy 9:14 & 29:20.

The book of life is described by its full name in Revelation 13:8, where John calls it "the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

In this verse, and in the one found in Revelation 17:8, it mentions the ones who worshipped the beast and who had received his mark.

They both say that their names were not written in the book of life. That is because they had been blotted out in accordance with violating Revelations 3:5.

The book of life is also mentioned by Paul of two men who helped Paul in Philippians 4:3, who were a part of Israel's kingdom program.

They assisted Paul, because Israel's prophecy program had been put on hold due to Israel's diminishing and her fall because of unbelief.

**Accord to their works:** The deeds that they have done, whether they were the works of Christ, or their own works.

**13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.**

**Death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them:** Here both death, and hell sound like a place, and in Revelation 6:8 death is personified as a person.

Proverbs 5:5, 7:27, Isaiah 28:15, and Revelation 1:8 tells us that there are keys to both death and hell.

**They were judged every man according to their works:** There is a judgment of works for the lost to determine the extent of their punishment in the lake of fire. While it will be eternal in its length, it will vary in its intensity for the worst sinners.

**14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.**

**Death and hell:** No one who was saved in any age will experience this second death. Those inhabitants of hell will get a new permanent dwelling place in the lake of fire.

Hell is only a temporary dwelling place until the last rejecter of God's Son breathes his final breath. Hell is located in the center of the earth.

**The lake of fire:** Its location is unknown.

**The second death:** Being thrown into the lake of fire forever.

**15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.**

**The book of life:** No person saved during the church age, or during the tribulation period will be judged on this day for they will have already been judged. Philippians 4:3, Revelation 3:5, 13:8, 17:8, 20:12, 21:27 and 22:19.

People in the dispensation of grace today do not have their names in the book of life, because it is not for the body of Christ. We already have eternal life indwelling us the moment we got saved.

Heaven and earth will be recreated possibly at the same time this judgement is occurring. Then once it is over the believers in the kingdom program will return to a new earth.

**The lake of fire:** *Revelation 19:20, 20: 10 & 14.*

### Chapter Twenty-one

#### A new heaven and a new earth

**1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.**

**A new heaven and a new earth:** A new heaven, and are earth are going to be created by God after the millennial reign of Christ, because of the effects of sin in both realms.

Satan sinned in the heavens, and he led one third of the angels to rebel in the heavens, and they are there currently awaiting their eviction. 2nd Peter 3:7-13.

This will occur at the mid-point of the tribulation period, when God shakes the heavens, and casts them out. Revelation 12:3-4.

Mankind sinned on the earth in the garden when the serpent tricked Eve in Genesis two, and the earth was cursed along with mankind. God will remove any effect of Satan's and man's sin from every corner of the universe.

The millennial kingdom has ended at this point, and the eternal kingdom now begins with none of the effects of the fall, because there is a new heaven, and a new earth. Sin has been done away with.

**And there was no more sea:** God does not need the seas anymore to separate mankind from killing one another in the new earth. God divided the lands (continents) back in the days of Peleg. Genesis 10:25.

**2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.**

**The holy city, new Jerusalem:** It comes down from God out of heaven after the kingdom is over, and the new heaven, and new earth are created.

**Prepared as a bride adorned for her husband:** The city is identified as the bride later on in this chapter. Nowhere in scripture is the church, which is Christ's body, ever called the bride of Christ. This is a man-made doctrine that permeates Christendom.

When Jesus said he was going to prepare a place for them, he was speaking to the believing remnant of Jews about the city of new Jerusalem. John 14:2. He also said in John 14:3 that when he returns, he would receive them unto himself in that city. Isaiah 62.

**3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.**

**The tabernacle of God:** This is fulfilled, not upon the death of a believer today, nor after the tribulation, or even during the kingdom, but in eternity future.

**He will dwell with them:** Immanuel (God with us). Matthew 1:23.

**They shall be his people:** Hosea 2:23.

**4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.**

**God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes:** It is at this time in the distant future that God wipes away all tears from their eyes. In eternity future without sin and death there will be no reason for sorrow of any kind.

**There shall be no more death:** Because sin has been dealt with.



**Nor sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be no more pain:** Pain is a result of fallen man.

**The former things are passed away:** Sin is the cause of all these things, and when it is gone the need to cry will be gone as well.

**5 And he that sat upon the throne said,  
Behold, I make all things new.**

**And he said unto me,**

**Write: for these words are true and faithful.**

**I make all things new:** A new heaven, and a new earth. Revelation 21:1.

**6 And he said unto me,**

**It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.**

**I am the Alpha and Omega:** This is defined in the next five words, the beginning, and the end.

**The fountain of the water of life:** Remember these words are not for the church in the dispensation of grace, they are for the tribulation saints who are not sealed with eternal life by the holy Spirit as we are today. John 7:38 & Ephesians 4:30.

**7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son.**

**He that overcometh:** This phrase is used in each of the seven letters to the seven churches in Asia.

An overcomer is defined for us in 1st John 5:4-5 as someone who believes that Jesus Christ is the Son of God during that time when the kingdom is at hand. The kingdom is not at hand today in the dispensation of grace.

**Inherit all things:** *1st Peter 4:7 & Revelation 21:7.*

**8 But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.**

**The lake which burneth with fire and brimstone:** The lake of fire.

**The second death:** This is being cast into the lake of fire for eternity. Revelation 20:6.

**9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying,**

**Come hither, I will shew thee the bride, the Lamb's wife.**

**One of the seven angels:** This angel was one of the seven angels that were messengers to the seven churches in Asia. Revelation 1:16, 20 and chapters two and three.

**The seven vials:** They were poured out already. Revelation 16:7.

**The bride, the Lamb's wife:** Notice again the bride of the Lamb (Jesus Christ) is called that great city, the holy Jerusalem, that is to descend down from heaven, with her bridegroom.

Since Israel has an earthly destiny, this is Israel's city. Jerusalem, and holy Jerusalem are different places, one is even called new Jerusalem so as not to confuse the reader.

**10 And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God,**

**He carried me away in the spirit:** *Ezekiel 37:1, Revelations 1:10 & 17:3.*

**A great and high mountain:** Two possibilities are Matthew 4:8 & Isaiah 14:13.

**That great city, the holy Jerusalem:** The city of Jerusalem as the world has known throughout history, even in Solomon's day, cannot compare to the glory that will be new Jerusalem.

**11 Having the glory of God: and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal;**

**The glory of God:** *Acts 7:55, Revelation 15:8 & 21:23.*

**Her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal:** Her light, means the city of new Jerusalem's light. Revelation 4:3 and 21:18-19.

**12 And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel: 13 On the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates.**

It is a Jewish city every way you look at it. Twelve is the number of Israel in the Bible. It is the city of the bride, the Lamb's wife.

The word "bride" is only mentioned in the Bible fourteen times, and never in any of Paul's writings about the body of Christ. It is mentioned in reference to Israel though.

**A wall great and high:** The wall is as tall as it is wide.

**Twelve Gates:** There are three gates on each wall.

**Twelve Angels:** There were three angels on each side stationed at each gate.

**The names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel:** These are written on each gate in the same order they appeared around the tabernacle in the wilderness.

**14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.**

*Matthew 10:2 Now the names of the twelve apostles are these, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother; James, the son of Zebedee, and John his brother; 3 Philip, and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the publican; James the son of Alphaeus, and Labbaeus, whose surname was Thaddaeus; 4 Simon the Canaanite,*

*Acts 1:26 And they gave forth their lots; and the lot fell upon Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.*

Matthias replaced Judas, who betrayed Christ, and was numbered with the eleven, not Paul. Acts 1:26. Paul was the apostle of Gentiles. Romans 11:13.

**15 And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. 16 And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. 17 And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel.**

**A golden reed:** John was first given a reed in Revelation 11:1 to measure the temple during the tribulation period.

It was not a golden reed, like this one, it was like unto a rod. That was not God's temple that he would build, but a cheap replica designed by men. Gold represents deity, and God is the maker of this city.

**The city lieth foursquare:** Here we have the dimensions of the city that Christ has prepared for his bride. Just as a Jewish man would do for his bride in preparing a place for her, so Jesus does here.

Scriptures do not state that God has been preparing a place for us in the heavens for the last 2,000 years.

God created the world in six days, not because it took him that long, but because he wanted to teach us about himself in the seven days of creation. God has had our place prepared for us for quite a while longer.

**Twelve thousand furlongs:** 1,500 Miles.

**An hundred and forty and four cubits:** A cubit is the length between a man's elbow and the tip of his middle finger.

There is a correlation to the 144,000 Jewish, male, virgins found in Revelations 7:4, and the city of new Jerusalem, which is 144,000 square cubits high, wide, and deep.

**The measure of a man:** The refers to the measurement mentioned above.

**18 And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. 19 And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation of the wall of the city was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald;** Peter, Andrew, James & John.

**20 The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus; the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst.**

Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James the son of Alphaeus, Labbaeus, Simon the Canaanite, & Matthias.

**21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls: every several gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass.**

**Twelve pearls:** Oysters were considered unclean for Jews to eat, but the believing remnant is compared to a pearl of great price by Jesus in Matthew 13.

They are the pearls in the midst of unclean oysters. This is symbolic of believing Jews amongst heathen idol worshipping Gentiles.

Notice the numbers twelve, and 144,000 again used in this city, numbers always associated with Israel. These are the same colors in Israel's priestly garments.

**22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.**

**And I saw no temple therein:** John was saying that in eternity future when new Jerusalem comes down there will not be a temple in it. A temple was necessary because sins needed to be atoned for. There will be no more sin in eternity future.

We do not have a temple today in the dispensation of grace because the temple was for Israel, and our bodies are temples of the holy Spirit. John 2:21 & 1st Corinthians 6:19.

The Jews had a temple on earth, and they will have one in the kingdom, which is described for us in Ezekiel 40.

**23 And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof.**

**The city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon:** *Isaiah 24:23.*

**The Lamb is the light thereof:** Jesus is the Lamb, and he is the light of the world. Genesis 1:3.

**24 And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it.**

**The nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it:** *Isaiah 2:5 & 60:3.*

**The kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it:** There will be a gathering of gifts for Christ by the nations of the earth as was the custom of the kings who were subject to a conquering king. *Isaiah 66:20.*

Jesus Christ is that King, and the world will come annually to recognize him as such once and for all.

**25 And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. 26 And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it.**

**The gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there:** When sin is gone there will be no need to lock your doors, or gates. Satan will not bother anyone ever again. *Isaiah 60:11 & 20.*

**And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it:** The Gentiles will bring offerings to the Lord in Jerusalem:

*Isaiah 66:20 And they shall bring all your brethren for an offering unto the LORD out of all nations upon horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and upon mules, and upon swift beasts, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, saith the LORD, as the children of Israel bring an offering in a clean vessel into the house of the LORD.*

**27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.**

**Any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie:** Sin has been dealt with, and no sin will ever enter into this city. Satan will mount no more attacks ever again against God's creation.

**But they which are written in the Lamb's book of life:** It will be the home of the Israel of God, the body of Christ. Our destiny in the body of Christ will be in heavenly places, while new Jerusalem will be on the earth.

Paul names some kingdom saints who laboured with him in the work whose names were in the book of life. Philippians 4:3.

## Chapter Twenty-two

### A pure river of water of life

**1 And he shewed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.**

**A pure river of water of life:** This river water is a giver of life to those kingdom saints who partake of it, it is not for those in the body of Christ who already have eternal life. Ezekiel 47:1 & Revelation 21:6.

**2 In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.**

**The tree of life:** This tree is not on earth today; it is in heaven. It will be associated with the city of new Jerusalem after the 1,000-year kingdom has ended. Genesis 2:9.

It will be partaken of by all those saints from Adam unto the tribulation period, and the kingdom saints, but not by the body of Christ.

**Twelve manner of fruits:** The tree of life has twelve manner of fruits on it, which is not a coincidence, because it is related to Israel, and her program for the earth. One for each month.

**The leaves of the tree:** The healing of the nations. These will heal people from all nations from the curse of sin.

**3 And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:**

**There shall be no more curse:** The curse was a result of Adam's sin in the garden, when he partook of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

That has been removed here by the second Adam (Jesus Christ) and God is sitting on his throne along with his Son, and the 144,000 are serving him in this city.

**The throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it:** The it is the city of new Jerusalem.

**And his servants shall serve him:** In eternity future his servants in new Jerusalem will have work to do, just as members of the body of Christ will continue serving our Lord in heavenly places.

**4 And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.**

**His name shall be in their foreheads:** Satan had his counterfeit of this with his mark of the number of his name in the foreheads of all that followed him.

I am sure he will probably tell them that his mark is the mark spoken of here in verse four to deceive many at that time.

**5 And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.**

**There shall be no night there:** The light of the sun is not necessary to lighten new Jerusalem, because God will supply the light with his glory.

There will be no more night there because God is light. We will still have a moon in the sky, but as for new Jerusalem there shall never be night. Revelation 21:23.

**6 And he said unto me,**

**These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done.**

**These sayings are faithful and true:** Jeremiah 42:5, Revelation 3:14, 19:11 & 21:5.

**The holy prophets:** The events of this book are to occur quickly. They are not drawn out over two thousand years. Most of the events will happen in a seven-year period.

**His angel:** Genesis 24:7, Daniel 3:28, 6:22, Acts 12:11 & Revelation 1:1.

**His servants:** The believing Jew in the time of Jacob's trouble. They are also first mentioned in Revelation 1:1.

**Revelation 1:1 The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified it by his angel unto his servant John:**

**The things which must shortly be done:** This is also mentioned in Revelation 1:1. What begins in Revelation chapter one comes to its climax here in this final chapter.

**7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book.**

**Behold, I come quickly:** *Revelation 3:11.*

**Blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book:** This was said at the beginning of this book:

**Revelation 1:3 Blessed is he that readeth, and they that hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein: for the time is at hand.**

We in the body of Christ cannot keep the sayings of this book, because they are not for us, but they are for those who find themselves in the tribulation period.

**8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which shewed me these things.**

**I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel:** This was a case of mistaken identity here because, Jesus was one of the angels/messengers that had spoken to him.

**9 Then saith he unto me,**

**See thou do it not: for I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.**

**I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren the prophets:** He was also a prophet during the time of the tribulation period when there will be a need for prophets.

John thought this messenger must be God because of all the things going on around him, and he was corrected so that we might know not to bow down before anything except God.

**10 And he saith unto me,**

**Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book: for the time is at hand.**

**Seal not the sayings of the prophecy of this book:** This ending statement is in sharp contrast to Revelation 10:4-11 where John was told to seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered and write them not.

John will reveal the seven thunders when Israel is going through the time of Jacob's trouble, or at the end of the millennial kingdom when Satan is loosed for a season.

Do not believe someone if they tell you they know what the seven thunders utter, it is impossible to know today.

**The time is at hand:** This is a comment for the spiritually discerned. It is for God's prophetic time clock, that differs from ours.

God speaks to Israel as if there was no church age, by just continuing on as if 2,000 years of church history never happened, while the Jew was blinded in part. Then he just starts right where he left off without so much as a mention of the large gap in time.

**11 He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy, let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous, let him be righteous still: and he that is holy, let him be holy still.**

**He that is unjust, let him be unjust still:** See Luke 16:10 and its context surrounding it in verses 1-13.

When a person dies in faith, he is righteous, and he will remain as such, but when a lost person rejects Christ, he is unjust (not justified), and he will remain lost (unjustified) for all eternity.

**12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.**

**Behold, I come quickly:** God is going to reward every believer based on his works for Christ.

**My reward is with me:** The tribulation saints rewards are laid up for them in heaven, so when Jesus comes back quickly, he brings their rewards back with him.

**According as his work shall be:** It is talking about a reward for labour, not salvation.

**13 I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.**

**I am the Alpha and the Omega:** The first and the last letters of the Greek alphabet.

**The beginning and the end:** It is easy to understand that there was nothing but God in the beginning, but what does it mean when he says he is also the end.

This means that God created time, and he will do away with it, and that after all the small g gods are all forgotten he alone will be the last and only God with a capital G. Isaiah 44:6, & 48:12.

**14 Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.**

**Blessed are they that do his commandments:** Those who do God's commandments in the tribulation period will have the right to eat of the tree of life, and enter into new Jerusalem as part of an if, then, covenant.

Those of us in the church today already have eternal life indwelling us, so we have no need to eat of the tree of life.

This is the tribulation period, and not the church age, the holy Spirit does not indwell believers during that period as he does today.

If you force the doctrine of eternal security into the old testament, or the tribulation period, it will not fit, because it was never intended to. Eternal security is exclusively for us today.

**That they may have right to the tree of life:** They could eat of the tree of life because they did his commandments. Revelation 2:7. We do not do anything today to receive eternal life today accept believe the gospel found in 1st Corinthians 15:1-4.

**And may enter in through the gates into the city:** Only those who have done his commandments are able to enter through the gates into the city. Again, he is not speaking to us.

**15 For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie.**

**Without are dogs:** Without the city of new Jerusalem. Does this mean all the lost souls for all of eternity are outside the city walls of new Jerusalem? No!

But you do not have to go far to find the entrance to hell, where the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever. Revelation 14:11. The Bible calls unbelievers, dogs. Psalm 22:16, Isaiah 56:10-11, Matthew 7:6, 15:26 & Philippians 3:2.

**16 I Jesus have sent mine angel to testify unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring of David, and the bright and morning star.**

**17 And the Spirit and the bride say,**

**Come.**

**And let him that heareth say,**

**Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.**

**Mine angel:** See his angel in Revelation 1:3.

**To testify unto you these things in the churches:** The whole book is written to churches during the tribulation period that will endure these events. It is not written to the church which is Christ's body.

We will not be here for any of these things as we are not appointed unto wrath, we will have been raptured prior to the start of the time of Jacob's trouble. 1st Thessalonians 5:19 & Jeremiah 30:7.

**I am the root and the offspring of David:** A descendant of David.

**The bright and morning star:** Numbers 24:17 & Revelation 2:28.

**The Spirit and the bride say come:** The holy Spirit and the bride, which are the inhabitants of the city, new Jerusalem.

John says the same thing to two different groups, “let him that heareth say, Come.” This is a plea by kingdom believers (the bride) for the kingdom to come. Matthew 6:10.

**And let him that is athirst come:** God is still speaking to the seven churches from chapters two and three which should tell you that the whole book is written to them, not just the first three chapters.

**The water of life:** The tribulation saints will need to partake of the water of life as well. It is the Spirit and the bride which are inviting these tribulation saints who are not sealed by the Spirit to partake of the water of life, as well as the tree of life.

**18 For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book:**

**God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book:** By adding to the words of the prophecy of this book a person in the tribulation period will invoke the very punishments proclaimed for the unbelievers.

You can't you have the plagues added to you unless you are going through the tribulation period? God's word was added to by Eve in the Garden.

**19 And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.**

**God shall take away his part out of the book of life:** If someone in the tribulation period believes that Jesus was the Christ, but he perverts the prophecies of this book, he will have his part in the book of life taken away.

**And out of the holy city:** The holy city new Jerusalem is prepared for his Jewish bride, not the body of Christ.

**And from the things which are written in this book:** This is referring to the promises made to the overcomers in the book of the Revelation.

This is not doctrine for us in the dispensation of grace. It is for Israel in the time of Jacob's trouble. Jeremiah 30:7.

**20 He which testifieth these things saith,  
Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord  
Jesus.**

**21 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you  
all. Amen.**

**Surely I come quickly. Amen:** Six times in this final book of the Bible, Jesus tells Israel, that he is coming quickly.

The first two are in Revelation 2:5 & 16 where he says, “Repent or else I will return quickly,” the next three times he says, “Behold, I come quickly,” before saying, “Surely I come quickly.”

John, after the two initial warnings, says, “Even so, come, Lord Jesus.” Even though all this must come to past, come, Lord Jesus.

The End